MICROSOFT™
MS™-DOS

Operating System 3.2

User's Reference

Hldos ϕ62

Document No.   410630013-320-002-1285

Contents

Introduction

MS-DOS Version 3.2 Package Contents

1 disk with the following files:

        ANSI.SYS
        APPEND.EXE
        ASSIGN.COM
        ATTRIB.EXE
        BACKUP.EXE
        CHKDSK.EXE
        COMMAND.COM
        DEBUG.EXE
        DISKCOMP.EXE
        DISKCOPY.EXE
        DRIVER.SYS
        EDLIN.EXE
        EXE2BIN.EXE
        FC.EXE
        FDISK.EXE
        FIND.EXE
        FORMAT.EXE
        GRAFTABL.EXE
        GRAPHICS.COM
        IO.SYS (hidden file)
        JOIN.EXE
        LABEL.EXE
        LINK.EXE
        MODE.COM
        MORE.COM
        MSDOS.SYS (hidden file)
        PRINT.EXE
        RAMDRIVE.SYS
        RECOVER.EXE
        REPLACE.EXE
        RESTORE.EXE
        SHARE.EXE
        SORT.EXE
        SUBST.EXE
        SYS.COM
        TREE.EXE
        XCOPY.EXE

3 manuals:

        The MS-DOS User's Guide
        The MS-DOS User's Reference Manual
        The MS-DOS Programmer's Reference Manual

INTRODUCTION

1.0 WHAT IS MS-DOS?

Microsoft(R) MS-DOS(R) is a disk operating system for the 8086 family of computers. Through MS-DOS, you communicate with the computer, disk drives, and printer, managing these resources to your advantage.

2.0 ABOUT THIS MANUAL

This manual is a reference manual for MS-DOS. Two companion manuals tell you more about MS-DOS. These manuals are the MS-DOS User's Guide and the MS-DOS Programmer's Reference Manual. We assume that you have read the MS-DOS User's Guide and know how to start MS-DOS, how to copy, delete, and rename files, how to make copies of disks, and how to run applications. You should have already made a backup copy of your MS-DOS disk and stored the original in a safe place. Refer to the MS-DOS User's Guide to learn how to make a backup copy of your disk.

The following table will help you to use this manual:

If you want to know...	Turn to...
About naming files	Chapter 1
About multilevel directories	Chapter 1
About paths	Chapter 1
What a command is	Chapter 2
How to make a batch file	Chapter 2
What a command does	Chapter 3
About editing keys	Chapter 4
How to use EDLIN, the line editor	Chapter 5
How to use FC, the file comparison utility	Chapter 6
How to use LINK, a link utility	Chapter 7
How to use DEBUG, a debugging utility	Chapter 8
What to do if you have one drive	Appendix A
What a disk error means	Appendix B
About ANSI escape sequences	Appendix C
What a CONFIG.SYS file does	Appendix D
What an error message means	Appendix E
How to configure a hard disk	Appendix F
About installable device drivers	Appendix G

3.0 MS-DOS FILES

The MS-DOS disk contains the following files:

Filename	Function of File
COMMAND.COM	MS-DOS command processor
* MSDOS.SYS	MS-DOS operating system
* IO.SYS	Hardware-operating system interface
ANSI.SYS	Sets ANSI escape sequences
APPEND.EXE	Sets a search path for data files
ASSIGN.COM	Assigns a drive letter to a different drive
ATTRIB.EXE	Sets file attributes
BACKUP.EXE	Backs up files
CHKDSK.EXE	Checks disks
CONFIG.SYS	Configures system
DEBUG.EXE	Debugger
DISKCOMP.EXE	Compares disks
DISKCOPY.EXE	Copies disks
DRIVER.SYS	Configures installable block device drivers
EDLIN.EXE	Line editor
EXE2BIN.EXE	Converts .EXE files (optional file)
FC.EXE	Compares files
FDISK.EXE	Configures hard disks for MS-DOS
FIND.EXE	Finds a string in a list of files or standard input
FORMAT.EXE	Formats disks
GRAFTABL.COM	Loads a table of graphics characters
GRAPHICS.COM	Prepares for printing graphics
JOIN.EXE	Joins a disk drive to a specific pathname
LABEL.EXE	Labels a disk
LINK.EXE	Linker
MODE.COM	Sets output and display modes
MORE.COM	Reviews text
PRINT.EXE	Prints files
RAMDRIVE.SYS	Installs a virtual disk
RECOVER.EXE	Recovers disks
REDIR.EXE	Accesses files
REPLACE.EXE	Replaces previous version of files
RESTORE.EXE	Restores files
SHARE.EXE	Shares files
SORT.EXE	Sorts text
SUBST.EXE	Creates a string alias
SYS.COM	Transfers system
TREE.EXE	Lists files and subdirectories
XCOPY.EXE	Copies files and subdirectories

You will recognize this list of files when you issue a
Dir (Show Directory) command, described in the MS-DOS
User's Guide. The two files preceded by an asterisk
(*) are "hidden" files and do not appear when you enter
a Dir command.

4.0 WHAT'S NEXT?

In the next chapter, you will learn about files and
directories.

Chapter 1
Files and Directories

CHAPTER 1

FILES AND DIRECTORIES

Note

Before you read this chapter, you should already know
how to start MS-DOS, format and make backup copies of
disks, copy and delete files, and run programs. If
you are unfamiliar with how to do any of these, please
refer to the MS-DOS User's Guide for information.

1.1 FILES

1.1.1 What is a File?

A file is a collection of related information. A file on
your disk can be compared to a file folder in a desk drawer.
For example, file folders might contain business letters
from clients and important memos from associates.

Figure 1.1.   Disk Files are Like Paper Files

Files on your disks could also contain business letters and
memos.

All programs, text, and data on your disk reside in files
and each file has a unique name. You refer to files by
their filenames. In this chapter, you will learn how to
name your files.

You create a file each time you enter and save data or text
at your terminal.   Files are also created when you write
programs and save them on your disks.

1.1.2 How MS-DOS Keeps Track of Your Files

The names of files are kept in directories on a disk. These
directories also contain information on the size of the
files and the dates that they were created and updated. The
directory you are working in is called your <u>working</u>
directory.

An additional system area, called the File Allocation Table,
keeps track of the location of your files on the disk. It
also allocates the free space on your disks, so that you can
create new files.

Figure 1.2.   Directory and File Allocation Table

These two system areas, the directories and the File
Allocation Table, enable MS-DOS to recognize and organize
the files on your disks. The File Allocation Table is
copied onto a new disk when you format it with the MS-DOS
Format command, and one empty directory is created, called
the root directory.

1.1.3 The Dir (Show Directory) Command

If you want to know what files are on your disk, you can use
the Dir command. This command tells MS-DOS to display all
the files in the working directory on a specific disk.   For
example, if your MS-DOS disk is in drive A and you want to
see the listing for the working directory on that disk,
type:

        dir a:

This says   "of the disk in
"show me   drive A."
the directory"

MS-DOS responds with a directory listing of all the files in
the working directory on your MS-DOS disk. The display
should look similar to this:

```
Volume in drive A is DOS 3-2
Directory of A:\

COMMAND    COM    23769    12-02-85    8:32a
ANSI       SYS     1651    12-02-85    8:32a
DRIVER     SYS     1115    12-02-85    8:32a
RAMDRIVE   SYS     8192    12-02-85    8:32a
DEBUG      EXE    15660    12-02-85    8:32a
CHKDSK     EXE     9435    12-02-85    8:32a
SYS        EXE     3727    12-02-85    8:32a
EDLIN      EXE     7369    12-02-85    8:32a
RECOVER    EXE     4158    12-02-85    8:32a
PRINT      EXE     8291    12-02-85    8:32a
DISKCOMP   EXE     3700    12-02-85    8:32a
LABEL      EXE     1826    12-02-85    8:32a
LINK       EXE    41322    12-02-85    8:32a
FORMAT     EXE     9398    12-02-85    8:32a
SORT       EXE     1911    12-02-85    8:32a
MORE       COM      295    12-02-85    8:32a
APPEND     EXE     5888    12-02-85    8:32a
FIND       EXE     6416    12-02-85    8:32a
MODE       COM     5195    12-02-85    8:32a
TREE       EXE     2831    12-02-85    8:32a
XCOPY      EXE    11200    12-02-85    8:32a
EXE2BIN    EXE     3063    12-02-85    8:32a
FC         EXE    10624    12-02-85    8:32a
GRAPHICS   COM     3111    12-02-85    8:32a
GRAFTABL   COM     1169    12-02-85    8:32a
FDISK      EXE     8173    12-02-85    8:32a
ASSIGN     COM     1536    12-02-85    8:32a
SHARE      EXE     8557    12-02-85    8:32a
ATTRIB     EXE     8247    12-02-85    8:32a
JOIN       EXE     6295    12-02-85    8:32a
SUBST      EXE     2056    12-02-85    8:32a
DISKCOPY   EXE     4329    12-02-85    8:32a
REPLACE    EXE    11650    12-02-85    8:32a

   33 File(s)          98111 bytes free
```

Note

Two MS-DOS system files, IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS, are
"hidden" files and will not appear when you issue
the Dir command.

You can also get information about any file on your disk by
typing Dir and a filename. For example, if you have created
a file named MYFILE.TXT, the command:

        dir myfile.txt

gives you a display of all the directory information (name
of file, size of file, date created or edited) for the file
MYFILE.TXT.

For more information on the Dir command, refer to Chapter 3,
"MS-DOS Commands."

1.1.4   The Chkdsk (Check Disk) Command

The MS-DOS Chkdsk command is used to check your disks for
consistency and errors, much like a secretary proofreading a
letter.   Chkdsk analyzes the directories and the File
Allocation Table on the disk that you specify. It then
produces a status report of any problems, such as files
which have a non-zero size in the directory but really have
no data in them.

To check the disk in drive A, type:

        chkdsk a:

MS-DOS displays a status report and any errors that it has
found.   An example of this display and more information on
Chkdsk can be found in the description of the Chkdsk command
in Chapter 3. You should run Chkdsk occasionally for each
disk to make sure the files on your disk are OK.

1.2   HOW TO NAME YOUR FILES

The name of a typical MS-DOS file looks like this:

        newfile.doc
        └────────┘└──┘
        filename   filename extension

The name of a file consists of two parts. The _filename_ is
NEWFILE and the _filename extension_ is .DOC.

A filename can be from 1 to 8 characters long. The filename
extension is optional, and can be three or fewer characters.
It must be separated from the filename by a period. You can
type any filename in small or capital letters. MS-DOS then
translates these letters into uppercase characters.   Some
examples of filenames are:

        ACCOUNTS.FEB
        BUDGET.84
        SMITHCO.LTR
        CHAPTER1.NVL
        SCHEDULE

In addition to typing the filename and the filename
extension, you may need to include a drive name. A drive
name tells MS-DOS to look on the disk in a specific drive to
find the filename typed. For example, to find directory
information about the file NEWFILE.DOC, located on the disk
in drive B (when drive B is NOT the current [default]
drive), type the following command:

        dir b:newfile.doc

Directory information (name, size, date, and time created)
about the file NEWFILE.DOC are displayed on your screen.

If drive A is the default drive, MS-DOS automatically
searches the disk in drive A for the filename NEWFILE; so
it is not necessary to type the drive name. A drive name is
needed if you want to tell MS-DOS to look on a different
drive to find a file.

Your filenames will probably be made up of letters and
numbers, but other characters are allowed, too. Valid
characters for filename extensions are the same as those for
filenames. Here is a complete list of the letters and
symbols you can use in filenames and extensions:

    A-Z a-z   0-9 $ &

    %   '   (   )   -   @

    ^   {   }   ~   ` !   #

1.3 INVALID FILENAMES

MS-DOS treats some device names specially, and certain
three-letter names are reserved for the names of these
devices. These three-letter names cannot be used as
filenames, but they can be used as extensions. You must not
name your files any of the following:

AUX   Used when referring to input from, or output to, an
        auxiliary device (such as a printer or a disk
        drive).

CON   Used when referring to keyboard input, or to output
        to the terminal console (screen).

PRN   Used when referring to the printer device.

NUL   Used when you do not want to create a particular
        file, but the command requires an input or output
        filename.

Even if you add device designations or filename extensions
to these filenames, MS-DOS still assumes that they refer to
the devices listed above. For example, CON.XXX still refers
to the console and cannot be used as the name of a disk
file.

1.4   WILDCARDS

Two special characters (called wildcards) can be used when
you are searching for files on a disk: the asterisk (*) and
the question mark (?). These special characters give you
greater flexibility when using filenames in MS-DOS commands.

1.4.1 The ? Wildcard

A question mark (?) in a filename or filename extension
means that any character can occupy that position. For
example, the MS-DOS command:

        dir test?run.exe

lists all directory entries on the default drive that have
eight characters in the filename, begin with TEST, have any
character in the next position, end with the letters RUN,
and have a filename extension of .EXE.   Here are some
examples of files that might be listed by the above Dir
command:

        TEST1RUN.EXE
        TEST2RUN.EXE
        TESTBRUN.EXE

1.4.2 The * Wildcard

An asterisk (*) in a filename or filename extension means that any character can occupy that position or any of the remaining positions in the filename or extension. For example,

    dir test*.exe

will list all directory entries on the default drive with filenames that begin with the characters TEST and have an extension of .EXE. Here are some examples of files that might be listed by the above Dir command:

    TEST1.EXE
    TEST2RUN.EXE
    TEST6RUN.EXE
    TESTALL.EXE

Important

The wildcard designation *.* refers to all files on the disk. Note that this can be very powerful and destructive when used in MS-DOS commands. For example, the command:

    del *.*

deletes all files on the default drive, regardless of filename or extension.

Examples:

To list the directory entries for all files named ACCOUNTS on drive A (regardless of their filename extensions), simply type:

    dir a:accounts.*

To list the directory entries for all files with filename extensions of .TXT (regardless of their filenames) on the disk in drive B, type:

    dir b:*.txt

This command is useful if, for example, you have given all your text files a filename extension of .TXT. By using the Dir command with wildcard characters, you can get a listing

of all your text files even if you do not remember all of
their filenames.

1.5 HOW TO PROTECT YOUR FILES

MS-DOS is a powerful and useful tool when you process
personal and business information. As with any computer,
errors can occur and information may be misused. If you are
doing work that cannot be replaced or requires a high level
of security, you should take steps to ensure that your
programs are protected from others using, modifying, or even
deleting them. Simple measures you can take--such as
removing your disks when they are not in use, keeping backup
copies of valuable information, and installing your
equipment in a secure facility--can help you keep your files
secure.

1.6 DIRECTORIES

The names of your files are kept in a directory on each
disk. The directory also contains information on the size
of the files, and the dates they were created and updated.

When there is more than one user on your computer, or when
you are working on several different projects, the number of
files in the directory can become large and unwieldy. You
may want your own files kept separate from a co-worker's, or
you may want to organize your programs into categories that
are convenient for you.

In an office, you can separate files by putting them in
different filing cabinets; in effect, creating different
directories of information. MS-DOS lets you organize the
files on your disks into directories. Directories are a way
of dividing your files into convenient groups of files. For
example, you may want all of your accounting programs in one
directory and text files in another. Any one directory can
contain any reasonable number of files, and it may also
contain other directories (referred to as subdirectories).
This method of organizing your files is called a multilevel
directory structure.

Figure 1.3. Multilevel Directory Structure

A multilevel directory structure can be thought of as a "tree" structure: directories are branches of the tree and files are the leaves, except that the "tree" grows downward; that is, the "root" is at the top. The root is the first level in the directory structure. It is the directory that is automatically created when you format a disk and start putting files on it. You can create more directories and subdirectories by following the instructions later in this chapter.

The directory structure grows as you create new directories for groups of files, or for other people on the system. Within each new directory, files can be added, or new subdirectories can be created.

It is possible for you to "travel" around this structure to find any file in the system by starting at the root, then traveling down any of the branches to the desired file. Conversely, you can start where you are within the file system and travel toward the root.

The directory you are in at any time is called the "working directory." The filenames discussed earlier in this chapter are relative to your working directory, and do not apply to any other directories in the structure. Thus, when you turn on your computer, you are "in" the working directory. Unless you take special action when you create a file, the

new file is created in the working directory.   Users can
have files of the same name that are unrelated because each
is in a different directory.   See Figure 1.4,   which
illustrates a typical multilevel directory structure.

Figure 1.4. A Sample Multilevel Directory Structure

The root directory is the first level in the directory
structure.   You can create subdirectories from the root by
using the Mkdir command (refer to Chapter 3, "MS-DOS
Commands," for information on Mkdir).   In this example, five
subdirectories of ROOT have been created.   These include:

    1. A directory of games, named GAMES.

    2. A directory of all external commands, named BIN.

    3. A USER directory containing separate subdirectories
       for all users of the system.

    4. A directory containing accounting   information,
       named ACCOUNTS.

    5. A directory of programs, named PROGRAMS.

Suppose three co-workers, Joe, Sue, and Mary, each have
their own directories, which are subdirectories of the USER
directory. Sue has a subdirectory named FORMS.   Sue and
Mary have files in their directories, each named SALES.MAY.
Mary's SALES.MAY file is unrelated to Sue's.

This organization of files and directories is not important
if you only work with files in your own directory, but if
you work with someone else, or on several projects at once,
the multilevel directory structure becomes very handy. For
example, you could get a list of the files in Sue's FORMS
directory by typing:

        dir \user\sue\forms

Note that a backslash mark (\) is used to separate
directories from other directories and files. The first
slash indicates the separation from the root directory.

To find out what files Mary has in her directory, you could
type:

        dir \user\mary

This command tells MS-DOS to travel down the directory
structure from the root to the USER directory, and then to
the MARY directory, and to display all filenames in the MARY
directory.

1.7 PATHS

When you use multilevel directories, you must tell MS-DOS
where the files are located in the directory structure.
Both Mary and Sue, for example, have files named SALES.MAY.
Each will have to tell MS-DOS in which directory her file
resides when she wants to use it. They can do this by
giving MS-DOS a pathname to the file.

1.7.1 Pathnames

A pathname is a sequence of directory names followed by a
filename, each separated from the previous one by a
backslash (\).

The general format of pathnames is:

        [<directoryname>]\[<directoryname>...]\[<filename>]

A pathname may contain any number of directory names. If a
pathname begins with a slash, MS-DOS searches for the file
beginning at the root (or top) of the directory structure.
Otherwise, MS-DOS begins at the working (current) directory
and searches downward from there.

```
+----------------------------------------------------------+
|                                                          |
|                         Note       .       .             |
|                                                          |
|  Some MS-DOS commands, such as Dir and Print, cannot     |
|  accept pathnames with more than 63 characters, even     |
|  though you can create directories that are longer than  |
|  this limit.  You must change directories to access      |
|  these files.                                            |
|                                                          |
+----------------------------------------------------------+
```

The pathname of Sue's SALES.MAY file is:

        \USER\SUE\SALES.MAY

The pathname of Mary's SALES.MAY file is:

        \USER\MARY\SALES.MAY

When you are in your working directory, a filename and its
corresponding pathname may be used interchangeably. Some
sample names are:

\   Indicates the root directory.

\PROGRAMS   Directory under the root
                        directory that contains
                        program files.

\USER\MARY\FORMS\1A   A typical full pathname. This one
                        is file named 1A in the directory
                        named FORMS belonging to Mary.

SALES.MAY   Name of a file in the working
                        directory.

Each directory that has subdirectories beneath it is called
a "parent directory." MS-DOS provides special shorthand
notations for the working directory and the parent directory
(one level up) of the working directory:

                MS-DOS uses this "shorthand" name to
                indicate the name of the working directory
                in all multilevel directory listings.
                MS-DOS automatically creates this entry
                when a directory is made.

        ..   The shorthand name of the working directory's
                parent directory (one level up). If you type:

                dir ..

MS-DOS lists the files in the parent
directory of your working directory.

If you type:

dir ..\..

MS-DOS lists the files in the parent's
PARENT directory.

1.7.2 Paths and External Commands

External commands reside on disks as program files.   They
must be read from the disk before they can execute. (For
more information on external commands, refer to Chapter 2,
"Learning About Commands.")

When you are working with more than one directory, it is
convenient to put all MS-DOS external commands into a
separate directory so they do not clutter your other
directories.   When you issue an external command to MS-DOS,
MS-DOS immediately checks your working directory to find
that command. You must tell MS-DOS in which directory these
external commands reside.   This is done with the Path
command.

For example, if you are in a working directory named
\BIN\PROG, and all MS-DOS external commands are in \BIN, you
must tell MS-DOS to choose the \BIN path to find the Format
command. The command:

path \bin

tells MS-DOS to search in your working directory and the
\BIN directory for all commands. You only have to specify
this path once to MS-DOS during each computer session.   If
you want to know what the working path is, type the word:

path

to display the working path on the screen.

You can establish a search path by including the Path
Command in a special file named AUTOEXEC.BAT. Refer to
Chapter 2, "Learning About Commands," for more information
on the AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

For more information on the MS-DOS Path command, refer to
Chapter 3, "MS-DOS Commands."

1.7.3 Paths and Internal Commands

Internal commands are the simplest, most commonly used
commands.   They execute immediately because they are loaded
into your computer's memory when you start MS-DOS.   (For
more information on internal commands, refer to Chapter 2,
"Learning About Commands.")

Some internal commands can use paths. The commands, Copy,
Dir, Del, and Type, have greater flexibility when you
specify a pathname after the command.

The format of these commands is shown below.

        Copy <pathname> <pathname>
            If the second pathname is a directory,
            all files are copied into that directory.

            Example:

                copy \bin\user\joe \accounts

        Del <pathname>
            If the pathname is a directory, all the files in
            that directory are deleted. The prompt "Are you
            sure (Y/N)?" is displayed if you try to delete
            a path. Type Y (for Yes) to complete the
            command, or type N (for No) to stop the command.

            Example:

                del \user\joe

        Dir <pathname>
            Displays the directory for a specific path.

            Example:

                dir \user\joe

        Type <pathname>
            You·must specify a filename in a path for
            this command. MS-DOS displays the file
            on your screen in response to the Type
            command.

            Example:

                type \user\sue\report.doc

1.8 USING DIRECTORIES

The following sections describe how to display, change, and
delete your working directory. You will also learn how to
create directories and subdirectories.

1.8.1 How to Display Your Working Directory

All commands are executed while you are in your working
directory.   You can find out the name of the directory you
are in by issuing the MS-DOS command Chdir   (Change
Directory) with no pathname. For example, if your working
directory is \USER\JOE, when you type:

    chdir

and press the Return key, you would see:

    A:\USER\JOE

This is your working drive plus the working directory
(\USER\JOE).

```
+-------------------------------------------------------+
|                     Shortcut                          |
|                                                       |
|   You can use the letters "cd" for the "chdir"        |
|   command to save time.  The command                  |
|   "cd user\joe" is the same as "chdir \user\joe".     |
|                                                       |
+-------------------------------------------------------+
```

If you now want to see what is in the \USER\JOE directory,
you can use the MS-DOS Dir command. The following is an
example of the display you might receive from the Dir
command for a subdirectory:

    Volume in drive A has no ID
    Directory of A:\USER\JOE

    .   <Dir>   12-02-85   10:09a
    ..   <Dir>   12-02-85   10:09a
    TEXT   <Dir>   12-02-85   10:09a
    FILE1   COM   5243   12-02-85   11:30a
         4 File(s)   836320 bytes free

A volume ID for this disk was not assigned when the disk was
formatted.   (For information on assigning a volume ID to a
disk, turn to the Format command in Chapter 3, "MS-DOS
Commands.") Note that MS-DOS lists both files and
directories in this output. As you can see, Joe has a

subdirectory   named   TEXT.   The   "."   means   the   working
directory \USER\JOE, and the ".." is short   for   the   parent
directory \USER.   FILE1.COM   is   a   file   in the \USER\JOE
directory. All of these directories and files   are   on   the
disk in drive A.

Note

Because MS-DOS considers a directory to be just a spec-
ial type of file, you cannot give a subdirectory the
same name as a file in that directory. For example, if
you have a path \BIN\USER\JOE where JOE is a subdirect-
ory, you cannot create a file named JOE in the
\BIN\USER directory

1.8.2 How to Create a Directory

To create a subdirectory in your working directory, use the
Mkdir (Make Directory) command. For example, to create a
new directory named NEWDIR under your working   directory,
simply type:

        mkdir newdir

After MS-DOS runs this command, a new directory exists under
your   working   directory.   You   can also create directories
anywhere in the directory structure by specifying Mkdir and
then   the path of the directory you want to create. MS-DOS
automatically creates the "." and ".." entries in the   new
directory.

There is a limit on the length of a pathname:

            a:\attorney\jacobson\contracts\ellis.new

        from here<----------------------------------->to here

            This pathname cannot be over 63 characters long.

To put files in the new directory, use the MS-DOS line
editor, EDLIN. Chapter 5, "The Line Editor (EDLIN),"
describes how to use EDLIN to create and save files.   You
can also create and save files if you have purchased a word
processing program such as Microsoft(R) Word.

1.8.3 How to Change Your Working Directory

Changing from your working directory to another directory is very easy in MS-DOS. Simply type the Chdir (Change Directory) command and then a pathname. For example, type:

        chdir \user

Then press the Return key. MS-DOS changes the working directory to \USER. You can specify any pathname after the command to "travel" around the directory structure. The command:

        chdir ..

always puts you in the parent directory of your working directory.

1.8.4 How to Delete a Directory

To delete a directory in the structure, use the MS-DOS Rmdir (Remove Directory) command. For example, to remove the NEWDIR directory from the working directory, type:

        rmdir newdir

The NEWDIR directory must be empty except for the "." and ".." entries before it can be removed; this prevents you from accidentally deleting files and directories. You can delete any directory by specifying its pathname. To remove the \USER\JOE directory, make sure that it has only the "." and ".." entries, then type:

        rmdir \user\joe

To remove all the files in a directory (except for the . and .. entries), type Del and then the pathname of the directory. For example, to delete all files in the \USER\SUE directory, type:

        del \user\sue

MS-DOS prompts:

        Are you sure (Y/N)?

If you are sure you want to delete all the files in the directory, type Y (for Yes). Type N (for No) to stop the command.

You cannot delete the "." and ".." entries. They are created by MS-DOS as part of the multilevel directory structure.

1.9 HOW TO RENAME A DIRECTORY

There is no command to rename a directory in MS-DOS.   You
can, however, rename a directory that has no subdirectories
by following these steps:

1.   Create a new directory with the new name using the
     Mkdir command.

2.   Copy all files from the old directory to the new
     directory with the Copy *.* command.

3.   Delete the contents of the old directory with the
     Del *.* command.

4.   Delete the old directory with the Rmdir command.

Example:

To rename the \user\joe directory \user\sue:

1.   Type:

          mkdir \user\sue

     and press the Return key.

2.   Type:

          copy \user\joe*.* \user\sue

3.   Type:

          del \user\joe*.*

     (Type Y in response to the prompt "Are you sure?")

4.   Type:

          rmdir \user\joe

1.10 SUMMARY OF COMMANDS IN THIS CHAPTER

COMMAND	PURPOSE	EXAMPLE
Dir	Displays a directory	dir a:
Chkdsk	Checks disks	chkdsk b:
Path	Sets MS-DOS search path	path \deb\games
Chdir	Displays working directory; changes directories	chdir \user\bill
Mkdir	Makes a new directory	mkdir \user\sally
Rmdir	Removes a directory	rmdir \bin\games

1.11 WHAT'S NEXT?

In the next chapter, you will learn about MS-DOS commands.

Chapter 2
Learning About Commands

CHAPTER 2

LEARNING ABOUT COMMANDS

2.1 WHAT IS A COMMAND?

A command is a way of communicating with the computer. By
typing MS-DOS commands at your terminal, you can ask the
computer to perform useful tasks. There are MS-DOS commands
that:

        Compare, copy, display, delete, and rename files
        Copy and format disks
        Execute programs
        Analyze and list directories
        Enter date, time, and remarks
        Set various printer and screen options
        Copy MS-DOS system files to another disk
        Request MS-DOS to wait for a specific period
        of time

2.2 TYPES OF MS-DOS COMMANDS

There are two types of MS-DOS commands:

        Internal commands
        External commands

Internal commands are the simplest, most commonly used
commands.   You cannot see these commands when you do a
directory listing on your MS-DOS disk; they are part of a
large file named COMMAND.COM.   When you type internal
commands, they execute immediately. The following internal
commands are described in Chapter 3, "MS-DOS Commands":

Break	Del	Mkdir	Set
Chdir	Dir	Path	Shift
Cls	Echo	Pause	Time
Copy	Exit	Prompt	Type
Ctty	For	Rem	Ver
Date	Goto	Ren	Verify
	If	Rmdir	Vol

<u>External</u> commands are on disks as program files. They must
be read from a disk before they can execute.

Any filename with a filename extension of .COM, .EXE or .BAT
is considered an external command. For example, programs
such as FORMAT.COM and DISKCOPY.COM are external commands.
Because all external commands are files, you can create
commands and add them to MS-DOS. Programs that you create
with most languages (including assembly language) are .EXE
(executable) files.

When you type an external command, do not include its
filename extension. The following external commands are
described in Chapter 3, "MS-DOS Commands":

Append	Fdisk	Print
Assign	Find	Recover
Attrib	Format	Restore
Backup	Graftabl	Share
Chkdsk	Graphics	Sort
Command	Join	Subst
Diskcomp	Label	Sys
Diskcopy	Mode	Tree
Exe2bin	More	

2.3 COMMAND OPTIONS

You can use options in your commands to give MS-DOS extra
information. If you do not include some options, MS-DOS
provides a value called a "default value." Refer to
individual command descriptions in Chapter 3 for the default
values.

Square brackets ([ ]) mean that an item is optional. Angle
brackets (< >) mean that you supply the text for the item.
Note that the drive name is not required unless you need to
indicate to MS-DOS which disk to search for a specific file.

The following is the format of all MS-DOS commands:

     Command [options...]

where [options...] can be one of the following:

drive: Refers to disk drive name.

filename   Refers to any name for a disk file, including
                the filename extension if there is one. The
                filename option does not refer to a device or
                to a disk drive name.

pathname   Refers to a pathname or filename in the
                following general format:

                [<directory>]\[<directory>...]\[<filename>]

switches   Switches are options that control MS-DOS
                commands.   They are preceded by a forward
                slash (for example, /p).

arguments   Provide more information to MS-DOS commands.
                You usually choose between arguments, for
                example, ON or OFF.

2.4 THINGS YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT COMMANDS

The following information applies to all MS-DOS commands:

     1. Commands are usually followed by one or more
         options, such as a filename.

     2. Commands and options may be typed in uppercase or
         lowercase letters, or any combination of the two.

     3. Commands and options must be separated by certain
         characters or spaces.   Because they are easiest,
         you usually use the space and comma to separate
         commands from options. For example:

                 del newfile.old newfile.txt
                 rename,thisfile thatfile

         You can also use the semicolon (;), the equal sign
         (=), or the Tab key between MS-DOS commands and
         their options.

         In this manual, we will use a space between
         commands and options, such as:

                 copy memo1 memo2

4. Commands take effect only after you have pressed
    the Return key.

5. When instructions say "Press any key," you can
    press any alpha (A-Z) or numeric (0-9) key, or the
    Spacebar.

6. You must include the filename extension when
    referring to a file that has a filename extension.

7. You can stop commands while they are running by
    pressing Control-C.

8. When commands produce a large amount of output on
    the screen, the display automatically scrolls to
    the next screen. You can press Control-S to
    suspend the scrolling. Press Control-S again to
    view the rest of the display on the screen.

9. MS-DOS editing and function keys can be used when
    typing commands. Refer to Chapter 4, "MS-DOS
    Editing and Function Keys," for a complete
    description of these keys.

10. Disk drives are referred to as source drives and
    destination drives. A source drive is the drive
    you will be transferring information from. A
    destination drive is the drive you will be
    transferring information to.

2.5 INPUT AND OUTPUT

MS-DOS always assumes that input comes from the keyboard and
output goes to the screen. However, the flow of command
input and output can be redirected. Input can come from a
file rather than a keyboard, and output can go to a file or
to a line printer instead of to the screen. Also, "pipes"
can be created that allow output from one command to become
the input to another. Redirection and pipes are discussed
in the next sections.

2.5.1 How to Redirect Your Output

Most commands produce output that is sent to your terminal
screen.   You can send this information to a file by using a
greater-than sign (>) in your command.   For example, the
command:

        dir

displays a directory listing of the disk in the default
drive on the screen. The same command can send this output
to a file named NEWFILES by typing the output file on the
command line following a greater-than sign (>):

        dir >newfiles

If the file NEWFILES doesn't exist, MS-DOS creates it and
stores your directory listing in it. If NEWFILES already
exists, MS-DOS overwrites what is in the file with the new
data.

If you want to append your directory or a file to another
file (instead of replacing the entire file), two
greater-than signs (>>) can be used to tell MS-DOS to append
the output of the command (such as a directory listing) to
the end of a specified file. The command:

        dir >>newfiles

appends your directory listing to an existing file named
NEWFILES. If NEWFILES doesn't exist, it is created.

It is often useful to have input for a command come from a
file rather than from a terminal.   This is possible in
MS-DOS by using a less-than sign (<) in your command.   For
example, the command:

        sort <names >list1

sorts the file NAMES and sends the sorted output to a file
named LIST1. (For more information on the Sort command, see
Chapter 3, "MS-DOS Commands.")

2.5.2 Filters

A filter is a command that reads your input, transforms it
in some way, and then outputs it, usually to your screen or
to a file. In this way, the data is said to have been
"filtered" by the program. Since filters can be put
together in many different ways, a few filters can take the
place of many specific commands.

MS-DOS filters include Find, More, and Sort. Their
functions are described below:

    Find   Searches for some text in
              a file.

    More   Displays text one screenful
              at a time.

    Sort   Sorts text.

You can see how these filters are used in the next section.

2.5.3 Command Piping

If you want to give more than one command at a time to the
system, you can "pipe" commands to MS-DOS. For example,
sometimes you may want the output of one program sent as the
input to another program. A typical case would be a program
that produces output in columns. You might want to have
these columns sorted.

Piping is done by separating commands with the pipe symbol,
which is the vertical bar (|). For example, the command:

    dir | sort

displays an alphabetically sorted listing of your directory
on the screen. The vertical bar causes all output generated
by a command on the left side of the bar to be sent to the
right side of the bar for processing.

You can also use piping when you want to send output to a
file. If you want your directory sorted and sent to a new
file (for example, DIREC.FIL), you could type:

    dir | sort >direc.fil

MS-DOS creates a file named DIREC.FIL on your default drive.
DIREC.FIL contains a sorted listing of the directory on the
default drive, since no other drive was specified in the
command. To specify a drive other than the default drive
(for example, drive B), type:

```
dir | sort >b:direc.fil
```

This sends the sorted data to a file named DIREC.FIL on drive B.

A "pipeline" may .consist of more than two commands. For example:

```
dir | sort | more
```

sorts your directory, shows it to you one screen at a time, and puts --MORE-- at the bottom of your screen when there is more output to be seen.

You will find many uses for piping commands and filters.

2.6   BATCH PROCESSING

Often you may find yourself typing the same sequence of
commands over and over to perform some common task. With
MS-DOS, you can put the command sequence into a special file
called a batch file, and execute all the commands simply by
typing the name of the batch file. "Batches" of your
commands in such files are processed as if they were typed
from the keyboard. Each batch file must be named with the
.BAT extension, and is executed by typing the filename
without its extension.

Figure 2.1.   Batch File

You can create a batch file by using EDLIN, the line editor,
or by typing the Copy command. Refer to the "How to Create
an AUTOEXEC.BAT File" section later in this chapter for more
information on using the Copy command to create a batch
file.

Two MS-DOS commands are used only in batch files: Rem and
Pause. Rem allows you to include comments in your batch
files without these lines being executed as commands. Pause
prompts you with an optional message and permits you to
either continue or stop the batch process at a given point.
Rem and Pause are described in detail in Chapter 3.

Batch processing is useful if you want to execute several
MS-DOS commands with one batch command. For example, a
batch file to format and check a new disk might look like
this:

     1:   Rem   This is a file to check new disks
     2:   Rem   It is named NEWDISK.BAT
     3:   Pause Insert new disk in drive B:
     4:   Format b:
     5:   Chkdsk b:

To execute this .BAT file after it has been entered and
saved as NEWDISK.BAT, simply type the filename without the
.BAT extension:

     newdisk

The result is the same as if the lines in the .BAT file were
entered from the keyboard as individual commands.

Figure 2.2 shows the three steps used to write, save, and
execute an MS-DOS batch file.

```
┌─────────────┐
│             │
│   NEWDISK   │        1.  Write a program.
│             │
│             │
└─────────────┘
       │
       ▼
┌─────────────┐
│             │
│ Directory:  │        2.  Assign a filename extension of .BAT and
│ NEWDISK.BAT │            save on your directory.
│             │
└─────────────┘
       │
       ▼
┌─────────────┐
│   Execute   │
│   NEWDISK   │
│   batch     │        3.  Enter NEWDISK as a command to MS-DOS.
│   process   │
│             │
└─────────────┘
```

Figure 2.2. **MS-DOS** Batch File Steps

The following list contains information that you should read
before you run a batch process with MS-DOS:

    1.   Only the filename should be entered to execute the
        batch file. Do not type the filename extension.

    2.   If you press Control-C when the batch file is
        running, this prompt appears:

            Terminate batch job (Y/N)?

        If you press Y, the remaining commands in the batch
        file are ignored and the MS-DOS prompt (usually A>)
        appears.

        If you press N, the current command aborts and
        batch processing continues with the next command in
        the file.

    3.   If you remove the disk that contains a batch file
        being run, MS-DOS will prompt you to insert it
        again before the next command can be read.

    4.   The last command in a batch file can be the name of
        another batch file.   This allows you to call one
        batch file from another when the first is finished.

    5.   You can redirect output in a batch file using the >
        and < symbols. However, you cannot use piping (the
        | symbol) in a batch file. Refer to section 2.5.1,
        "How to Redirect Your Output," and section 2.5.3,
        "Command Piping," for more information.

2.7 THE AUTOEXEC.BAT FILE

An AUTOEXEC.BAT file allows you to automatically execute
programs when you start MS-DOS. This is useful when you
want to run a specific package (for example, Microsoft
Multiplan(R)) under MS-DOS, and when you want MS-DOS to
execute a batch program each time you start your computer.
You can avoid loading two separate disks to perform either
of these tasks by using an AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

When you start your computer, MS-DOS searches the disk for a
file named AUTOEXEC.BAT. The AUTOEXEC.BAT file is a batch
file that is automatically executed each time you start the
system. It must be located in the root directory.

If MS-DOS finds the AUTOEXEC.BAT file, the   file   is
immediately executed and the date and time prompts are
bypassed.

If MS-DOS does not find an AUTOEXEC.BAT file when you first
load the MS-DOS disk, then the date and time prompts appear.
Figure 2.3 shows how MS-DOS uses the AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

```
                          +----------------+
                          |                |
                          |    You load    |
                          |  MS-DOS disk.  |
                          |                |
                          +----------------+
                                  |
        +-----------------+       |       +-----------------+
        |                 |       |       |                 |
        |    Command      |       |       |  Other system   |
        |  processor is   |<------+------>|   files are     |
        |  automatically  |               |    loaded.      |
        |    loaded.      |               |                 |
        +-----------------+               +-----------------+
                 |                                 |
                 |       +----------------+        |
                 |       |    Command     |        |
                 +------>|   processor    |<-------+
                         |   looks for    |
                         |  AUTOEXEC.BAT  |
                         |     file.      |
                         +----------------+
                                 |
                              <Does it
                               find it?>
                   Yes                      No
        +-----------------+          +----------------+
        |  Time and date  |          |                |
        |   prompts are   |          |  MS-DOS time   |
        |   bypassed.     |          |    and date    |
        |  AUTOEXEC.BAT   |          |  prompts are   |
        |    file is      |          |    issued.     |
        |   executed.     |          |                |
        +-----------------+          +----------------+
```

Figure 2.3.   How MS-DOS Uses the AUTOEXEC.BAT File

2.7.1 How to Create an AUTOEXEC.BAT File

If, for example, you want to automatically load BASIC and
run a program called MENU each time you start MS-DOS, you
could create an AUTOEXEC.BAT file as follows:

    1. Type:

        copy con autoexec.bat

    This statement tells MS-DOS to copy the information
    from the console (keyboard) into the AUTOEXEC.BAT
    file. Note that the AUTOEXEC.BAT file <u>must</u> be
    created in the root directory of your MS-DOS disk.

    2. Now type:

        basic menu

    This statement goes into the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. It
    tells MS-DOS to load BASIC and run the MENU program
    whenever MS-DOS is started.

    3. Press Control-Z and then press the Return key to
        put the command BASIC MENU in the AUTOEXEC.BAT
        file.

    4. The MENU program will now run automatically
        whenever you start MS-DOS.

To run your own BASIC program, type the name of your program
in place of MENU in the second line of the example. You can
enter any MS-DOS command or series of commands in the
AUTOEXEC.BAT file.

Helpful Hint

If you use an AUTOEXEC.BAT file, MS-DOS will not prompt
you for a current date and time unless you include the
Date and Time commands in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. We
recommend that you include these two commands in your
AUTOEXEC.BAT file, since MS-DOS uses this information
to keep your directory current. Refer to Chapter 3,
"MS-DOS Commands," for more information on the Date and
Time commands.

2.8 HOW TO CREATE A BATCH FILE WITH REPLACEABLE PARAMETERS

There may be times when you want to create a program and run
it with different sets of data. These data may be stored in
various MS-DOS files.

When used in MS-DOS commands, a <u>parameter</u> is an option that
you define. With MS-DOS, you can create a batch (.BAT) file
with dummy (replaceable) parameters.   These parameters,
named %0-%9, can be replaced by values supplied when the
batch file executes.

For example, when you type the command line:

        copy con newfile.bat

the next lines you type are copied from the console to a
file named NEWFILE.BAT on the default drive:

        del %3.doc
        copy %1.doc + %2.doc %3.doc
        print %3.doc

Now, press Control-Z and then press the Return key.   MS-DOS
responds with this message:

        1 File(s) copied
        A>_

The file NEWFILE.BAT, which consists of three commands, now
resides on the disk in the default drive.

The dummy parameters %1 and %2 are replaced sequentially by
the parameters you supply when you execute the file. If you
use the dummy parameter %0, it is always replaced by the
drive name, if specified, and the filename of the batch file
(for example, NEWFILE).

NOTES:

        1. Up to 10 dummy parameters (%0-%9) can be specified.
            Refer to the MS-DOS Shift command in Chapter 3 if
            you want to specify more than 10 parameters.

        2. If you use the percent sign as part of a filename
            <u>within a batch file</u>, you must type it twice. For
            example, to specify the file ABC%.EXE, you must
            type it as ABC%%.EXE in the batch file.

2.8.1 How to Run a Batch File

To execute the batch file NEWFILE.BAT and to specify the
parameters that will replace the dummy parameters, you must
enter the batch filename (without its extension) followed by
the parameters you want MS-DOS to substitute for %1, %2, and
%3.

Remember that the file NEWFILE.BAT consists of 3 lines:

```
   del %3.doc
      copy %1.doc +. %2.doc %3.doc
      print %3.doc
```

To execute the NEWFILE batch process, type

```
     newfile a:memo1 b:memo2 b:bigfile
```

and press Return. a:memo1 is substituted for %1, b:memo2
for %2, and b:bigfile for %3.

The result is the same as if you had typed each of the
commands in NEWFILE with their parameters, as follows:

```
     del b:bigfile
     copy a:memo1 + b:memo2 b:bigfile
     print b:bigfile
```

The following table shows how MS-DOS replaces each of the
above parameters:

BATCH FILENAME	PARAMETER1 (%1)	PARAMETER2 (%2)	PARAMETER3 (%3)
newfile	memo1.doc	b:memo2.doc	b:bigfile

Remember that if you specify the dummy parameter %0 in your
batch file, it is always replaced by the drive name (if
specified) and the filename of the batch file. If you do
not need to refer to the batch file, start your dummy
parameters at number %1.

2.9 SUMMARY OF COMMANDS IN THIS CHAPTER

COMMAND	PURPOSE	EXAMPLE
Rem	Adds comment line for batch files	rem This is a test file
Pause	Suspends execution of a batch file	pause Insert blank disk
Find	Searches for string of text in a specified file	find who newfile.txt
More	Pages through a file 23 lines at a time	type memo.txt | more
Sort	Sorts text	sort names.fil

2.10 WHAT'S NEXT?

The next chapter describes each MS-DOS command in detail.

Chapter 3
MS-DOS Commands

CHAPTER 3

MS-DOS COMMANDS

3.1 ABOUT COMMANDS

You should keep the following points in mind as you format MS-DOS commands:

1. You can type commands in any combination of uppercase or lowercase letters; MS-DOS changes them to uppercase letters.

2. Supply the text for any items enclosed in angle brackets (< >). For example, you should type the name of <u>your</u> file when <filename> is shown in the format.

3. Items in square brackets ([ ]) are optional. If you want to include optional information, do not include the square brackets, only the information within the brackets.

4. An ellipsis (...) means that you can repeat an item as many times as necessary.

5. For some commands, the syntax is too long to fit onto one line, so it is split into two (or more) lines. You, however, must give the command on one line.

6. You must include all punctuation where shown (with the exception of square brackets and angle brackets), such as commas, equal signs, question marks, colons, or slashes.

7. Unlike previous versions of MS-DOS, you can specify a pathname to run a specific command or program. For example, if you move the Assign program to a directory named \bin, you can type:

        \bin\assign c=e

8. Many commands manipulate "strings" of text. A "string" is a group of characters; it can include letters, numbers, spaces, and all other characters. Searching for a particular word in a file is a common use of a string.

3.2 ABOUT THIS CHAPTER

The commands in this chapter are divided into two sections:

1. Common MS-DOS commands

2. Batch commands

Commands are either external or internal. Each external command resides on disk as a file. Internal commands are included in a file named COMMAND.COM on the MS-DOS disk. External and internal commands are shown by the following symbols:

I

This shows that the command is internal

E

This shows that the command is external.

Some of the MS-DOS commands do not work over a computer network. If you try to use these commands, MS-DOS displays this error message:

Cannot <command> to a network device

where <command> is the name of the command you typed. The commands that do not work over a network (on a shared or remote device) are:

Chkdsk
Diskcomp
Diskcopy
Format
Label
Recover
Subst
Sys

If the command does not work over a network (on a shared or
remote device), you will see this symbol with the command
description:

 This shows that the command
does not work over a network.

3.3 MS-DOS COMMANDS

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│                           Note                           │
│                                                          │
│    If you have only one disk drive, or if you have       │
│    installed logical drives, refer to Appendix A for     │
│    instructions before running the following commands.   │
│                                                          │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

The following MS-DOS commands are described in this chapter.
Note that synonyms for commands are in parentheses.

Append   Sets a search path for data files.

Assign   Assigns a drive letter to a different drive.

Attrib   Sets or displays attributes of a file.

Backup   Backs up files from a hard disk.

Break   Sets Control-C check.

Chdir   Changes directories; prints working directory
          (CD).

Chkdsk   Scans the directory of the default or designated
          drive and checks for consistency.

Cls   Clears the screen.

Command   Processes internal MS-DOS commands.

Copy   Copies the file(s) specified.

Ctty   Changes the console TTY.

Date   Displays and sets the date.

Del   Deletes the file(s) specified (Erase).

Dir   Lists requested directory entries.

Diskcomp Compares disks.

Diskcopy Makes a copy of a disk.

Exe2bin   Converts executable files to binary format.

Exit   Exits command processor and returns to previous
          level.

Find   Searches for a constant string of text.

Format   Formats a disk to receive MS-DOS files.

Graftabl Loads a table of graphics characters.

Graphics Prepares MS-DOS for printing graphics.

Join   Joins a disk drive to a pathname.

Label   Labels disks.

Mkdir   Makes a directory (MD).

Mode   Modifies screen, communications port, and printer
          port parameters.

More   Displays output one screen at a time.

Path   Sets a command search path.

Print   Prints files.

Prompt   Assigns a default prompt.

Recover   Recovers a bad disk or file.

Ren   Renames first file as second file (Rename).

Replace   Replaces previous versions of files.

Restore   Restores backed up files.

Rmdir   Removes a directory (RD).

Set   Sets one string value to another in the
          environment, or displays the environment.

Share   Installs file sharing and locking.

Sort   Sorts data forward or backward.

Subst   Substitutes a string for a pathname.

Sys   Transfers MS-DOS system files from one drive to the
           drive specified.

Time   Displays and sets the time.

Tree   Displays directory and file names.

Type   Displays the contents of a file.

Ver   Prints MS-DOS version number.

Verify   Verifies all writes to a disk.

Vol   Displays the volume ID.

Xcopy   Copies files and subdirectories.

Batch Commands

Echo   Turns batch file echo feature on/off or displays
           setting.

For   Batch command extension.

Goto   Batch command extension.

If   Batch command extension.

Pause   Pauses for input in a batch file.

Rem   Displays a comment in a batch file.

Shift   Increases number of replaceable parameters in batch
           process.

These commands will be described in detail in the following
pages.

NAME

Append

PURPOSE

Sets a search path for data files.

SYNTAX

append
[<drive:>] [<path>] [;[<drive:>] [<path>]...]

COMMENTS

The <path> parameter specifies the directory that MS-DOS searches for a data file.

You can specify more than one path to search by separating each path with a semicolon (;).

If you use the Append command with no options, MS-DOS displays the current data path. If you use the command:

append ;

MS-DOS sets the NUL data path. This means that MS-DOS searches only the working directory for data files.

Append searches the data path for all files, regardless of the their file extensions, only with the following MS-DOS system calls:

```
Code      Function
 0FH      Open File (FCB)
 23H      Get File Size
 3DH      Open Handle
```

You can use the Append command across a network to locate remote data files.

Note

If you are using both the MS-DOS Assign and Append
commands, you must type the Append command before
Assign.

Example:

Suppose you want to access data files in a
directory called LETTERS on drive B, and in a
directory called REPORTS on drive A.   To do
this, use the command:

    append b:letters;a:reports

NAME

    Assign

PURPOSE

    Assigns a drive letter to a different drive.

SYNTAX

    assign[[x]=[y]]

COMMENTS

    The equal sign (=) is optional.

    x is the drive to which reads and writes are currently sent.

    y is the drive to which you want reads and writes sent.

    You do not have to type the colon after the drive letters x and y.

    To reset all drives back to their original assignments, type:

        assign

    and press the Return key.

    The Assign comand allows you to perform disk operations on drives other than A and B for programs that only use those two drives. The command

        assign a=c b=c

    enables you to use drives other than A and B, such as a hard disk (C). All references to drives A and B now go to drive C.

```
                              Note

   You should not use the Assign command with the Backup
   or Print commands or during normal use of MS-DOS.
   This is because the Assign command hides the true
   device type from commands that require actual drive
   information.  The Format and Diskcopy programs ignore
   any drive reassignments.
```

MESSAGES
          Incorrect parameter
                    One of the options you specified is wrong.

NAME

    Attrib

E

PURPOSE

    Sets or resets the read-only and archive
    attributes of a file; displays the attributes
    of a file.

SYNTAX

    attrib[+r|-r] [+a|-a] [<drive:>] <pathname>

COMMENTS

    +R sets the read-only attribute of a file.

    -R disables read-only mode.

    +A sets the archive attribute of a file.

    -A clears the archive attribute of a file.

    [<drive:>]<pathname> specifies the file you
    want to reference.

    If an application opens a file with read <u>and</u>
    write permission, Atrib forces read-only mode
    to allow file sharing over a network.

    The Backup, Restore, and Xcopy (Mcopy) commands
    use the archive attribute to control a
    selective Backup/Restore/Xcopy on files that
    have been modified. You can use the +A and -A
    options to select files that you want to back
    up with the Backup /m switch or copy with the
    Xcopy (or Mcopy) /m switch.

    To display the attribute of a specific file,
    type:

        attrib <pathname>

    and press the Return key.

    The wildcard characters *.* can be used to
    print the attributes of all files on a specific
    drive.

    Example:

    The following example makes the file named
    MYFILE.TXT read-only:

        attrib +r myfile.txt

NAME

        Backup

E

PURPOSE

        Backs up one or more files from one disk to
        another.

SYNTAX

        backup#[<drive:>] [<pathname>] [<drive:>] [/s] [/m]
        [/a] [/d:<date>] [/t:<time>] [/L:<filename>]

COMMENTS

        The Backup command can back up files on disks
        of different media. For example, you can back
        up files from:

            Hard disk to floppy disk
            Floppy disk to floppy disk
            Floppy disk to hard disk
            Hard disk to hard disk

        Backup backs up files from one floppy disk to
        another, even if the disks have a different
        number of sides or sectors.

        The first option that you specify is <drive:>,
        the drive that contains the files that you want
        to back up. The second <drive:> is the backup
        disk drive. Unless otherwise specified, the
        old files on a backup disk are erased before
        new files are added to it.

        If the target drive is a floppy disk, Backup
        places the backed up files in the root
        directory. If the target drive is a hard disk,
        Backup\ places the backed up files in a
        subdirectory called BACKUP. You must format
        new disks before Backup can use them.

        This backup program and the one supplied by
        IBM(R) are compatible. File and disk formats
        are the same as those used by the IBM Backup
        program unless you specify the /p or /L
        switches. You may not be able to use the IBM
        Restore program to restore files that were
        backed up with the /p or /L switch.

You can use the following switches with Backup:

/s   Back up subdirectories also.

/m   Back up only those files that have changed since the last backup.

/a   Add the files to be backed up to those already on the backup disk. Do not erase old files on the backup disk.

/d   Back up only those files that were last modified at or after a certain date.

/p   Pack as many files as possible onto each disk. Create a subdirectory on the disk if that is the only way to fill the backup disk. (WARNING: IBM Backup/ Restore compatibility may be lost if you use this switch.)

/t   Back up only those files that were last modified at or after a certain time.

/L   Make a backup log entry in the specified file. If you do not give a filename, Backup places the entries in a file called BACKUP.LOG in the root directory of the files being backed up. The first line in each entry contains: [date time] where date and time are the backup dates and times. Each subsequent line in an entry corresponds to one of the files that you backed up. These lines consist of the filename and the number of the floppy disk that contains the file. You can use this information when you need to restore a particular file from a floppy disk. If the backup log already exists, Backup appends the entry to the end of the file. (WARNING: IBM Backup/ Restore compatibility may be lost if you use this switch.)

Backup displays the name of each file as it is backed up. You should label and number each backup disk consecutively to help you restore the files properly with the Restore command.

If you are sharing files, you can backup only the files that you have access to.

```
+--------------------------------------------------------+
|                         Note                           |
|                                                        |
|   You should not use the Backup command if the drive   |
|   you are backing up has been assigned, joined, or     |
|   substituted. If you do, you may not be able to restore|
|   the files with the Restore command.                  |
|                                                        |
+--------------------------------------------------------+
```

The Backup program returns the following errorlevel codes:

0   Normal completion
1   No files were found to back up
2   Some files not backed up due to sharing conflicts
3   Terminated by user
4   Terminated due to error

You can use the batch processing If command to perform error processing based on the errorlevel returned by Backup.

NAME

Break

I

PURPOSE

Sets Control-C check.

SYNTAX

break [ON]

or

break [OFF]

COMMENTS

Depending on the program you are running, Control-C may be used to stop an activity (for example, to stop sorting a file). Normally, MS-DOS checks to see if Control-C has been typed while it is reading from the keyboard, writing to the screen, or to a printer. Setting Break to "on" allows Control-C checking to be extended to other functions such as disk reads and writes.

To check for Control-C during screen, keyboard, and printer reads and writes only, set Break to OFF.

To find out how Break is currently set, type:

break

and press the Return key.

NAME

Chdir (Change Directory)

SYNONYM

cd

PURPOSE

Changes directory to a different path; displays working directory.

SYNTAX

chdir [<pathname>]

COMMENTS

If your working directory is \BIN\USER\JOE and you want to change your path to another directory (such as \BIN\USER\JOE\FORMS), type:

chdir \bin\user\joe\forms

and press the Return key.

MS-DOS will put you in the new directory. A shorthand notation for the Chdir command is also available:

chdir ..

This command always puts you in the parent directory of your working directory.

Chdir used without a pathname displays your working directory. If your working directory is \BIN\USER\JOE on drive B, and you type:

chdir

then press the Return key, MS-DOS displays:

b:\bin\user\joe

Using the Chdir command in this way is useful when you need to know the name of your working directory.

The command:

chdir b:

displays the working directory on drive B.

NAME

Chkdsk (Check Disk)

PURPOSE

Scans the disk in the specified drive and
checks it for errors.

SYNTAX

chkdsk [<drive:>] [<pathname>] [/f] [/v]

COMMENTS

Chkdsk should be run occasionally on each disk
to check for errors. If any errors are found,
Chkdsk displays the appropriate error messages,
if any, followed by a status report.

A sample status report looks like this:

Volume DOSDISK   created Jan 12, 1986 3:21p

        362496 bytes total disk space
         38912 bytes in 2 hidden files
          1024 bytes in 2 directories
        282624 bytes in 42 user files
         39936 bytes available on disk

        524288 bytes total memory
        487248 bytes free

Chkdsk does not correct any errors found in
your directory unless you specify the /f (fix)
switch. If you specify the /v switch, Chkdsk
displays messages while it is running.

If you type a filename after Chkdsk, MS-DOS
displays a status report for the disk and for
the individual file.

You can redirect the output from Chkdsk to a
file if you want to save the status report for
future use. Simply type:

chkdsk a:>filename

The errors are sent to the specified filename.
Do not use the /f switch if you redirect Chkdsk
output.

MESSAGES
        Chkdsk may display the following messages:

        (.) (..) does not exist
            This is an informational message from
            Chkdsk. This message indicates that
            either the "." or the ".." directory entry
            is invalid.

        (filename) contains
        non-contiguous blocks
            The file or files you named are not
            written contiguously on the disk.

        All specified file(s) are contiguous
            The file or files you named are all
            written sequentially on disk.

            The following errors are corrected
            automatically if you specify the /f
            switch:

        Allocation error, size adjusted
            An invalid cluster number was found in the
            FAT. The file was truncated at the end of
            the last valid cluster.

        Entry has a bad attribute (or size or link)
            This message may be preceded by one or two
            periods to indicate which subdirectory is
            invalid. If you have specified the /f
            switch, Chkdsk attempts to correct the
            error.

        Errors found, F parameter not specified
        Corrections will not be written to disk
            You must specify the /f switch if you want
            the errors corrected by Chkdsk.

        First cluster number is invalid
        Entry truncated
            The file directory entry contains an
            invalid pointer to the data area. If you
            specified the /f switch, the file is
            truncated to a zero-length file.

X lost clusters found in y chains
Convert lost chains to files (Y/N)?
        If you respond Y to this prompt, and if
        you specified the /f switch, Chkdsk
        creates a file in the root directory for
        you to resolve this problem (files created
        by Chkdsk are named FILEnnnn.CHK). If you
        did not specify the /f switch, Chkdsk does
        nothing.

        If you respond N to this prompt and have
        specified the /f switch, Chkdsk displays:

              X bytes disk space freed

        If you respond N to this prompt and have
        not specified the /f switch, Chkdsk
        displays:

              X bytes disk space would be freed

        MS-DOS cannot correct the following errors
        returned by Chkdsk, even if you specified
        the /f switch. You must take action to
        correct the situation:

(filename) is cross-linked on cluster
        Make a copy of the file you want to keep,
        and then delete both files that are
        cross-linked on the same cluster.

Cannot Chdir to (filename)
Tree past this point not processed
        Chkdsk is traveling the tree structure of
        the directory and is unable to proceed to
        the specified directory. All
        subdirectories and files under this
        directory are not verified.

Cannot Chdir to root
Processing cannot continue
        Chkdsk is traveling the tree structure of
        the directory and is unable to return to
        the root directory. Chkdsk is not able to
        continue checking the remaining
        subdirectories to the root. Try to
        restart MS-DOS. If this error persists,
        the disk is unusable.

Cannot recover . entry, processing continued
        The "." entry (working directory) is
        defective.

Cannot recover .. entry
        The ".." (parent directory) entry is
        defective.

Directory is totally empty, no . or ..
        The specified directory does not contain
        references   to   working   and   parent
        directories.   Delete   the   specified
        directory and recreate it.

Disk error reading FAT
        One of your File Allocation Tables has a
        defective   sector   in   it.   MS-DOS   will
        automatically use the other FAT. It is a
        good   idea   to   copy   all   your files onto
        another disk.

Disk error writing FAT
        One of your File Allocation Tables has a
        defective   sector   in   it.   MS-DOS   will
        automatically use the other FAT. It is a
        good   idea   to   copy   all   your files onto
        another disk.   .

Incorrect DOS version
        You   cannot   run   Chkdsk   on   versions   of
        MS-DOS before 3.0.

Insufficient memory
Processing cannot continue
        There is not enough memory in your machine
        for Chkdsk to process this disk. You must
        obtain more memory to run Chkdsk.

Insufficient room in root directory
Erase files in root and repeat Chkdsk
        Chkdsk cannot run until you   delete   files
        in the root directory.

Invalid drive specification
        Specify a valid drive.

Invalid parameter
        One   of   the   switches   that   you   have
        specified is wrong.

Invalid sub-directory entry
        The subdirectory that you   have   specified
        either   does   not   exist   or   is   invalid.
        Check to see that you   have   entered   the
        subdirectory name correctly.

Invalid working directory
Processing cannot continue
        Your disk is bad.   Replace   the   disk   or
        make a copy from your backup system disk.

Probable non-DOS disk
Continue (Y/N)?
        The disk you are using is a non-DOS disk.
        You   must indicate whether or not you want
        Chkdsk to continue processing. This error
        message   usually   means   that   the   File
        Allocation Table (FAT) is bad.

Unrecoverable error in directory
Convert directory to file (Y/N)?
        If you respond Y to this prompt, Chkdsk
        converts   the   bad   directory into a file.
        You can then delete it.

        If you respond N to this prompt, you may
        not   be   able to write to or read from the
        bad directory.

NAME

    Cls

I

PURPOSE

    Clears the terminal screen.

SYNTAX

    cls

COMMENTS

    The Cls command causes MS-DOS to send the ANSI
    escape   sequence ESC[2J (which clears your
    screen) to your console.

NAME

Command

E

PURPOSE

Starts the command processor.

SYNTAX

command [<drive:><pathname>][<cttydev>][/p]
[/c <string>] [/e:<nnnnn>]

COMMENTS

This command starts a new command processor
(the MS-DOS program that contains all internal
commands).

The command processor is loaded into memory in
two parts: the transient part and the resident
part. Some application programs write over the
transient part of COMMAND.COM when they run.
When this happens, the resident part of the
command processor looks for the COMMAND.COM
file on disk so it can reload the transient
part.

The <drive:><pathname> options tell the command
processor where to look for the COMMAND.COM
file if it needs to reload the transient part
into memory.

<cttydev> allows you to specify a different
device (such as aux) for input and output. See
the Ctty command in this chapter for more
information.

The /e switch specifies the environment size,
where <nnnnn> is the size in bytes. The size
may range between 128 and 32768 bytes. The
default value is 128 bytes.

If <nnnnn> is less than 128 bytes, MS-DOS
defaults to 128 bytes and gives the message:

Invalid environment size specified

If <nnnnn> is greater than 32768 bytes, MS-DOS
gives the same message, but defaults to 32768
bytes.

The /p switch tells COMMAND.COM not to exit to
any higher level.

The /c switch, if used, should be the last
switch in the command. It tells the command
processor to execute the command or commands
specified by <string> and then return.

Example:

    command /c chkdsk b:

This example tells the command processor to:

1. Start a new command processor under the
   current program.

2. Run the command "chkdsk b:"

3. Return to the first command processor.

Refer to the sample CONFIG.SYS file in Appendix
D, "How to Configure Your System," to see how a
pathname and the /p switch are used with
Command.

NAME

    Copy

    I

PURPOSE

    Copies one or more files to another disk.   If
    you prefer, you can give the copies different
    names. This command also copies files on the
    same disk and appends files.

SYNTAX

    copy [<drive:>]<pathname> [<drive:>]
    [<pathname>] [/v] [/a] /b] (to copy)

    copy <pathname> + <pathname> ... <pathname>
    (to append)

COMMENTS

    To copy files:

+--+
| |
| Note |
| |
| If the source and target files are both in the |
| working directory, you may use filenames, rather than |
| complete pathnames. |
| |
+--+

    If the second pathname is not given, the copy
    will be on the default drive and will have the
    same name as the original file (first
    pathname). If the first pathname is on the
    default drive and if you do not specify the
    second pathname, the Copy command will quit.
    (Copying files to themselves is not allowed.)
    MS-DOS will display the error message:

        File cannot be copied onto itself
        0 File(s) copied

    The second option may take three forms:

    1. If the second option is a drive name only,
        the original file is copied with the
        original filename to the designated drive.
        (For example, "copy memo.doc'b:" will make
        a copy on drive B named MEMO.DOC.)

2. If the second option is a filename only,
    the original file is copied to a file on
    the default drive with the filename
    specified. (For example, "copy memo.doc
    letter.doc" will make a copy of MEMO.DOC,
    name it LETTER.DOC, and place it on the
    default drive.)

3. If the second option includes a drive name,
    the original file is copied to a file on
    the drive specified. (For example, "copy
    memo.doc b:memo.doc" will make a copy of
    memo.doc on the default drive, name the
    copy MEMO.DOC, and place the copy on the
    disk in drive B.)

The /v switch causes MS-DOS to verify that the
sectors written on the target disk are recorded
properly. Although there are rarely recording
errors when you run Copy, you can verify that
critical data has been correctly recorded.
This option causes the Copy command to run more
slowly because MS-DOS must check each entry
recorded on the disk. An error is displayed if
a write is not verified.

The /a and /b switches mean that the files
being processed are ASCII or binary files.
Each switch applies to the filename preceding
it, and to all remaining filenames in the
command, until another /a or /b is encountered.

The following discussion applies to the /a and
/b switches:

When used with a source filename:

/a   Causes the file to be treated as an
        ASCII (text) file. Data in the file is
        copied up to but not including the first
        end-of-file mark (in EDLIN, this is
        Control-Z). The remainder of the file is
        not copied.

/b   Causes the entire file to be copied,
        including any end-of-file mark.

Examples:

        copy memo.txt /a letter.txt

        copy report.asm /b report2.asm

When used with a destination filename:

/a   Causes an end-of-file character to be
        added as the last character of the file.

/b   Causes no end-of-file character to be
        added.

When you are appending files, the default
switch is always /a.

Examples:

        copy memo.txt letter.txt /a

        copy report.asm report2.asm /b

To append files:

The Copy command also allows you to append
files. Simply list any number of files as
options to Copy, separated by +, then specify a
target file to send the combined files to.

For example:

    copy intro.rpt + body.rpt + b:sum.rpt report

This command combines files named INTRO.RPT,
BODY.RPT, and SUM.RPT (on drive B) and places
them in the file on the default drive called
REPORT.

To combine several files using wildcards into
one file, you could type:

        copy *.lst combin.prn

This command takes all files with a filename
extension of .LST and combines them into a file
named COMBIN.PRN.

In the following example, for each file found
matching *.LST, that file is combined with the
corresponding .REF file. The result is a file
with the same filename but with the extension
.PRN. Thus, FILE1.LST will be combined with
FILE1.REF to form FILE1.PRN; then XYZ.LST with
XYZ.REF to form XYZ.PRN; and so on.

        copy *.lst + *.ref *.prn

The following Copy command combines all files
matching *.LST, then all files matching *.REF,
into one file named COMBIN.PRN:

    copy *.lst + *.ref combin.prn

Note

Do not try to append files where one of the source
filenames has the same extension as the target.
For example, the following command is an error if
ALL.LST already exists:

    copy *.lst all.lst

The error would not be detected, however, until
ALL.LST is appended. At this point ALL.LST could have
already been destroyed.

Copy compares the filename of the input file
with the filename of the target. If they are
the same, that one input file is skipped, and
the error message "Content of destination lost
before copy" is printed. Further joining
proceeds normally. This allows "summing"
files, as in this example:

    copy all.lst + *.lst

This command appends all *.LST files, except
ALL.LST itself, to ALL.LST. This command will
not produce an error message.

MESSAGES

>   Cannot do binary reads from a device
>   The copy cannot be done in binary mode
>   when you are copying from a device.
>   Remove the /b switch or specify an ASCII
>   copy with the /a switch.

>   Content of destination lost before copy
>   A file to be used as a source file has
>   been overwritten prior to completion of
>   the copy.

>   Example:

>   copy x + y y

>   which destroys Y before it can be copied.

NAME

        Ctty

PURPOSE

        Allows you to change the device from which you
        issue commands. (In this command, the letters
        tty represent the console;   that is, your
        keyboard.)

SYNTAX

        ctty <device>

COMMENTS

        The <device> is the device from which you are
        giving commands to M^-DOS.   This command is
        useful if you want to change the device on
        which you are working. The command

            ctty aux

        moves all command I/O (input/output) from the
        current device (the console) to an AUX port
        such as another terminal. The command

            ctty con

        moves I/O back to the console.   Refer to the
        "Illegal Filenames" section of Chapter 1,
        "Files and Directories," for a list of valid
        device names to use with the Ctty command.

Note

There are many programs that do not use MS-DOS for
input, output, or both. These programs do input
directly to the hardware on your computer. The Ctty
command will have no effect on these programs. Ctty
will only affect programs that use MS-DOS.

NAME

Date

PURPOSE

Enter or change the date known to the system.
This date will be recorded in the directory for
any files you create or change.

You can change the date from your terminal or
from a batch file. (MS-DOS does not display a
prompt for the date if you use an AUTOEXEC.BAT
file, so you may want to include a Date command
in that file.)

SYNTAX

date [<mm>-<dd>-<yy>]

COMMENTS

If you type:

date

Date responds with the message:

Current date is (weekday) (mm)-(dd)-(yy)
Enter new date (mm-dd-yy):_

Press the Return key if you do not want to
change the date shown.

You can also type a particular date after the
Date command, as in:

date 3-9-86

In this case, the "Enter new date:" prompt does
not appear after you have pressed Return.

Use only numbers when you type the date;
allowed numbers are:

<mm> = 1-12
<dd> = 1-31
<yy> = 80-99 (or 1980-2099)

The date, month, and year entries may be
separated by hyphens (-) or slashes (/).
MS-DOS is programmed to change months and years
correctly, whether the month has 31, 30, 29, or
28 days. MS-DOS handles leap years, too.

It is possible to change the mm-dd-yy format in which the date is displayed and entered. The Country command in the CONFIG.SYS file allows you to change the date format to the European standard dd-mm-yy. Refer to Appendix D, "How to Configure Your System," for more information on the CONFIG.SYS file.

MESSAGES

Invalid date
Enter new date (mm-dd-yy):_
    If the numbers or separators are not valid, Date displays this message. Enter a valid date.

I

NAME
        Del (Delete)

SYNONYM
        Erase

PURPOSE
        Deletes all files with the designated file
        specification.

SYNTAX
        del [<drive:>] <pathname>

COMMENTS
        If the pathname is *.*, the prompt "Are you
        sure?" appears. If a Y is typed as a response,
        then all files on the disk are deleted.

NAME

    Dir (Directory)

I

PURPOSE

    Lists the files in a directory.

SYNTAX

    dir [<drive:>] [<pathname>] [/p] [/w]

COMMENTS

    If you just type Dir, all directory entries on
    the default drive are listed. If you include a
    drive name, such as "dir b:", all entries on
    the disk in the specified drive are listed. If
    only a filename is entered with no extension
    ("dir filename"), then all files with the
    designated filename on the disk in the default
    drive are listed. When you type a filename
    with a drive letter (for example, "dir
    b:filename.ext"), all files with the filename
    specified on the disk in the drive specified
    are displayed. In all cases, files are listed
    with their size in bytes and with the time and
    date of their last modification. The wildcards
    ? and * (question mark and asterisk) may be
    used in the filename option. Note that the
    following Dir commands are equivalent:

Command	Equivalent
dir	dir *.*
dir filename .	dir filename.*
dir .ext	dir *.ext

    Two switches may be used with Dir. The /p
    switch selects Page Mode. With /p, display of
    the directory pauses after the screen is
    filled. To resume display of output, press any
    key.

    The /w switch selects wide display. With /w,
    only filenames are displayed, without other
    file information. Files are displayed five per
    line.

Note that if the Country command in the
CONFIG.SYS file is set to a country other than
the U.S., the directory date and time formats
will differ. Refer to Appendix D, "How to
Configure Your System," for more information on
the CONFIG.SYS file.

Note

The Dir command cannot list the directory if you
specify a pathname of more than 64 characters (includ-
ing the drive name). Therefore, you may need to change
directories if you want to list files in deep subdir-
ectories.

NAME

Diskcomp

PURPOSE

Compares the contents of the disk in the source
drive to the disk in the target drive.

SYNTAX

diskcomp [<drive:>] [<drive:>] [/1] [/8]

COMMENTS

The first <drive:> option specifies the drive
that contains the source disk, and the second
<drive:> option specifies the drive that
contains the target disk.

If you specify only one drive, Diskcomp uses
the default drive as the target drive. If you
specify the same drive as the source and
target, Diskcomp does a comparison using one
drive, and prompts you to insert the disks as
appropriate.

The /1 switch causes Diskcomp to compare just
the first side of the disk, even if the disks
and drives that you are using are double-sided.

The /8 switch causes Diskcomp to compare just
the first 8 sectors per track, even if the
disks contain 9 or 15 sectors per track.

Diskcomp performs a track-by-track comparison
of the disks. It automatically determines the
number of sides and sectors per track based on
the format of the source disk. If the target
disk is not the same type as the disk in the
source drive, Diskcomp displays the message:

Drive types (double, single-sided) or
diskette types not compatible

If all of the tracks are the same, Diskcomp
displays the message:

Diskettes compare OK

If the tracks are not the same, Diskcomp
displays a "Compare error" message that
includes the track and side number where it
found the mismatch.

When Diskcomp completes the comparison, it prompts:

Compare more diskettes (Y/N)?_

If you type Y, Diskcomp prompts you to insert the proper disks and does the next comparison. If you type N, Diskcomp ends. If you end Diskcomp and if the disk in the default drive does not contain MS-DOS, Diskcomp prompts you:

Insert disk with COMMAND.COM in drive A
and strike any key when ready

You cannot use Diskcomp with assigned, joined, or substituted drives. Diskcomp does not work on network drives. If you attempt to use the Diskcomp command with these types of drives, Diskcomp diskpays an error message.

Note

If you are comparing a disk with a backup disk that you made with the Copy command, Diskcomp may give the "Compare error" message, even if the files on the disks are identical. This is because the Copy command duplicates the information, but it doesn't necessarily place the information in the same location on the target disk. In this case, you should use the FC utility to compare individual files on the disk.

When correctly written programs exit back to DOS, they return an error code: 0 if no error occurred, or a value greater than zero if there was a problem. This error code can be tested in batch files, and it allows batch programmers to "branch" to an error-handling routine in the batch file.

The Diskcomp command returns the following errorlevel codes:

0   Compared OK
     The disks compared exactly.
1   Did not compare
     The disks were not the same.
2   Control-C error
     The user terminated with Control-C.
3   Hard error
     An unrecoverable read or write error occurred
     --did not compare.

    4   Initialization error
            There is not enough memory--invalid drives or
            command line syntax.

MESSAGES
        Cannot DISKCOMP to or from
        a network drive
                One of the drives that you specified is a
                network device.

        Cannot DISKCOMP to or from
        an ASSIGNed or SUBSTed drive
                One of the drives that you specified is a
                drive that you created using the ASSIGN or
                SUBST command.

        Compare another diskette (Y/N)?
                After comparing the disks, Diskcomp asks
                if you want to compare another disk.
                Press Y (for Yes) or N (for N).

        Compare error on
        side <NNN>, track <nnn>
                Diskcomp found an error on side NNN, track
                nnn.

        Compare OK
                Diskcomp displays this message if the
                disks are identical.

        Compare process ended
                Diskcomp displays this message if a fatal
                error occured during the comparison.

        Comparing (tt) tracks
        (xx) sectors per track, (y) side(s)
                This message gives the format (of the
                first disk) that Diskcomp is using to
                perform the comparison.

        DEVICE Support Not Present
                The disk drive does not support MS-DOS 3.2
                device control.

        Do not specify filename(s)
        Command format: DISKCOMP d: d:[/1][/8]
                You specified an incorrect switch or gave
                a filename in addition to a drive name.

        Drive (x:) not ready
        Make sure a diskette is inserted into
        the drive and the door is closed
                You have not inserted a disk into the
                specified disk drive.

Drive types or diskette types
not compatible
        You cannot compare a single-sided disk
        with   a   double-sided   disk,   or   a
        high-density disk with a low-density disk.
        You   should use FC to compare the files on
        the disks.

FIRST diskette bad or incompatible
        Diskcomp cannot determine the format of
        the disk that you want to compare.

Incorrect DOS version
        You must use the correct version of MS-DOS
        with this command.

Insert FIRST diskette in drive (x:)
Press any key when ready . . .
        Diskcopy displays this message to prompt
        you to insert the first disk into the
        specified drive.

Insert SECOND diskette in drive (x:)
Press any key when ready . . .
        Diskcopy displays this message to prompt
        you to insert the second disk into the
        specified drive.

Insufficient memory
        There is not enough memory available to
        perform the comparison.

Invalid drive specification
        You specified an drive that is incorrect
        or doesn't exist.
Invalid parameter
        You specifed a parameter that is incorrect
        or doesn't exist.

SECOND diskette bad or incompatible
        The second disk does not contain the same
        format as the first disk, or Diskcomp does
        not recognize the format of the second
        disk.

Specified drive does not exist
or is non-removable
        You must specify the name of a valid
        floppy drive. Diskcomp cannot compare
        hard disks.

Unrecoverable read error on drive (x:)
        Diskcomp could not read the disk.

NAME

    Diskcopy

PURPOSE

    Copies the contents of the disk in the source
    drive to the disk in the target drive.

SYNTAX

    diskcopy [<drive:>] [<drive:>]

COMMENTS

    The first option you specify is the source
    drive. The second option is the target drive.

    If the disk in the target drive is unformatted,
    Diskcopy formats it with the same format that
    is on the source disk.

    You can specify the same drives or you may
    specify different drives. If the drives are
    the same, a single-drive copy operation is
    performed. You are prompted to insert the
    disks at the appropriate times. Diskcopy waits
    for you to press any key before continuing.

    After copying, Diskcopy prompts:

        Copy complete
        Copy another (Y/N)?_

    If you press Y, MS-DOS will prompt you to
    insert source and target disks, and the next
    copy is performed on the same drives that you
    originally specified.

    To end the Diskcopy process, press N.

    If you omit both options, a single-drive copy
    operation is performed on the default drive.

    If you omit the second option, the default
    drive is used as the target drive.

    Both disks must have the same number of
    physical sectors and those sectors must be the
    same size.

    Disks that have had a lot of files created and
    deleted on them become fragmented, because disk
    space is not allocated sequentially. The first
    free sector found is the next sector allocated,
    regardless of its location on the disk.

A fragmented disk can cause slowness due to delays in finding, reading, or writing a file. If this is the case, you must use either the Copy command or the Xcopy command to copy your disk, instead of Diskcopy. Because Copy and Xcopy both copy files sequentially to a disk, the new disk will not be fragmented.

For example:

        xcopy a:*.* b: /s

copies all files from the disk in drive A to the disk in drive B.

Diskcopy figures out the number of sides to copy, based on the source drive and disk.

When correctly written programs exit back to DOS, they return an error code: 0 if no error occurred, or a value greater than zero if there was a problem. This error code can be tested in batch files, and it allows batch programmers to "branch" to an error-handling routine in the batch file.

0   Copied Successfully
        The last Diskcopy was completed with no errors.
1   Non-fatal read/write error
        An unrecoverable but non-fatal read or write error occurred.
2   Control-C error
        The user entered Control-C to terminate Diskcopy.
3   Fatal hard error
        Diskcopy was unable to read the source disk or format the target disk.
4   Initialization error
        There is not enough memory--invalid drives or command line syntax.

MESSAGES

> Cannot DISKCOPY to or from a network drive
> > The user is trying to Diskcopy to or from a network drive.

> Cannot DISKCOPY to or from an ASSIGNed or SUBSTed drive
> > The user is trying to Diskcopy to or from a "virtual" drive that was created by using the SUBST or ASSIGN command.

> Copy another diskette (Y/N)?
> > The user prompted to see if the Diskcopy process was to be repeated on another source/target disk.

> Copy not completed
> > Diskcopy cannot copy the entire disk. Use the Copy command to copy specific files onto another disk.

> Copying NN tracks
> NN Sectors/Track, NN Side(s)
> > Diskcopy describes the format of the SOURCE disk.

> Disk error while reading drive A:
> Abort, Ignore, Retry?
> > Diskcopy found errors during processing. Refer to Appendix B, "Disk Errors," for information on this message.

> Disks must be the same size
> > You cannot copy the contents of a source disk with a format different from the target disk using Diskcopy. Use the Copy command to copy files onto the disk.

> Drive (x:) not ready
> Make sure a diskette is inserted into
> the drive and the door is closed
> > The disk is not ready to be read or written to.

> Drive types or diskette types not compatible
> > For example: Attempting to copy to a high density disk in a low density drive.

Formatting while copying
        If the target disk is not the same format
        as the source disk, Diskcopy reformats the
        target disk.

Incorrect DOS version
        Many version 2.x and 3.x utilities will
        not run on earlier versions of MS-DOS.
        Some utilities will only run under the
        exact version of MS-DOS for which they
        were configured.

Insert [SOURCE|TARGET] diskette in drive D:
Press any key when ready...
        This is the prompt to begin the Diskcopy
        process.

Insufficient memory
        Therre is not enough memory to perform the
        Diskcopy.

Invalid drive specification
Specified drive does not exist
or is non-removable
        The   user   specified   an   invalid   or
        non-removable drive.

Invalid parameter,
Do not specify filename(s)
Command Format: DISKCOPY (x:) (x:) [/1]
        The user specified either an illegal
        switch or filenames instead of only drive
        names.

[SOURCE|TARGET] diskette bad or incompatible
Copy process ended
        Diskcopy could not read the source
        diskette, or the target diskette could not
        be read or formatted.

Target diskette is write protected
        The target disk has a write protect tab on
        it.

Target diskette may be unusable
        Unrecoverable read or write errors were
        encountered while copying to the target
        disk. The target disk is not an exact
        copy of the source disk.

Unrecoverable [read|write] error on drive (x:)
side NN, track NN
        An error reading/writing to the disk
        occurred.

Source and target diskettes are not the same
format. Cannot do the copy
>   You must have the same size and kind of
         disks to run Diskcopy. For example, you
         cannot copy from a single-sided disk to a
         double-sided disk. Reformat the target
         disk to be of the same type as the source
         disk or substitute a disk of the same
         type.

NAME

    Exe2bin

E

PURPOSE

    Converts .EXE (executable) files to binary
    format.

SYNTAX

    exe2bin [<drive:>]<pathname>
    [<drive:>][<pathname>]

COMMENTS

    This command is useful only if you want to
    convert .EXE (executable) files to binary
    format. The file named by <pathname> is the
    input file. If no extension is specified, it
    defaults to .EXE. The input file is converted
    to .BIN file format (memory image of the
    program) and placed in the output file (second
    pathname). If you do not specify a drive name,
    the drive of the input file will be used. If
    you do not specify an output filename, the
    input filename will be used. If you do not
    specify a filename extension in the output
    filename, the new file will be given an
    extension of .BIN.

    The input file must be in valid .EXE format
    produced by the linker. The resident, or
    actual code and data part of the file must be
    less than 64K. There must be no STACK segment.

    Two kinds of conversions are possible,
    depending on whether the initial CS:IP (Code
    Segment: Instruction Pointer) is specified in
    the .EXE file:

    1. If CS:IP is not specified in the .EXE file,
        a pure binary conversion is assumed. If
        segment fixups are necessary (that is, the
        program contains instructions requiring
        segment relocation), you will be prompted
        for the fixup value. This value is the
        absolute segment at which the program is to
        be loaded. The resultant program will be
        usable only when loaded at the absolute
        memory address specified by a user
        application. The command processor will
        not be able to load the program.

2. If CS:IP is 0000:100H, it is assumed that
    the file will run as a .COM file with the
    location pointer set at 100H by the
    assembler statement ORG; the first 100H
    bytes of the file are deleted. No segment
    fixups are allowed, as .COM files must be
    segment relocatable; that is, they must
    assume the entry conditions explained in
    the _Microsoft_ _Macro_ _Assembler_ _Manual_. Once
    the conversion is complete, you may rename
    the output file with a .COM extension.
    Then the command processor will be able to
    load and execute the program in the same
    way as the .COM programs supplied on your
    MS-DOS disk.

MESSAGES

File cannot be converted
    CS:IP does not meet either of the criteria
    specified above, or it meets the .COM file
    criterion but has segment fixups. This
    message is also displayed if the file is
    not a valid executable file.

File not found
    The file is not on the disk specified.

Insufficient memory
    There is not enough memory to run Exe2bin.

File creation error
    Exe2bin cannot create the output file.
    Run Chkdsk to determine if the directory
    is full, or if some other condition caused
    the error.

Insufficient disk space
    There is not enough disk space to create a
    new file.

Fixups needed - base segment (hex):
    The source (.EXE) file contained
    information indicating that a load segment
    is required for the file. Specify the
    absolute segment address at which the
    finished module is to be located.

File cannot be converted The input file is   not
        in the correct format.

WARNING - Read error in EXE file.
Amount read less than size in header
        This is a warning message only. It   means
        that the .EXE header in the file is
        inconsistent with the size of the file.

NAME

        Exit

I

PURPOSE

        Exits   the   program   COMMAND.COM   (the   command
        processor)   and returns to a previous level, if
        one exists.

SYNTAX

        exit

COMMENTS

        This command can be used when you   are   running
        an   application   program   and want to start the
        MS-DOS command processor, then return   to   your
        program.   For   example, to look at a directory
        on   drive   B   while   running   an   application
        program,   you must issue an EXEC of the command
        interpreter   (system   call   4BH).   The   system
        prompt   will   appear.   You can now type the Dir
        command and MS-DOS will display   the   directory
        listing.   When   you type "exit", you return to
        the previous level (your application program).

NAME

Find

E

PURPOSE

Searches for a specific string of text in a
file or files.

SYNTAX

find [/v] [/c] [/n]
<"string"> [<drive:>] [<pathname>]

COMMENTS

Find is a filter that takes as options a string
and a series of filenames. It will display all
lines that contain a specified string (group of
characters) from the files in the command line.

If no filenames are typed, Find takes the input
from the screen and displays all lines that
contain the specified string.

Switches for Find are:

/v   Causes Find to display all lines
         not containing the specified
         string.

/c   Causes Find to print only the count
         of lines that contained a match
         in each of the files.

/n   Causes each line to be preceded by
         its relative line number in the
         file.

The string must be enclosed by quotation marks.

Examples:

        find "Fool's Paradise" book1.txt book2.txt

This command displays all lines from BOOK1.TXT
and BOOK2.TXT (in that order) that contain the
string "Fool's Paradise." The command

        dir b: | find /v "date"

causes MS-DOS to display all names of the files
on the disk in drive B that do not contain the
string "date". Type double quotes around a
string that already has quotes in it.

MESSAGES

Incorrect DOS version
Find will only run on versions of MS-DOS
that are 2.0 or higher.

Find: Invalid number of parameters
You did not specify a string when issuing
the Find command.

Find: Syntax error
You typed an illegal string when issuing
the Find command. Remember that the
string must be enclosed by quotation
marks.

Find: File not found <filename>
The filename you have specified does not
exist or Find cannot find it.

Find: Read error in <filename>
An error occurred when Find tried to read
the file specified in the command.

Find: Invalid parameter <option-name>
You specified an option that does not
exist.

NAME

Format

PURPOSE

Formats the disk in the specified drive to accept MS-DOS files.

SYNTAX

format <drive:> [/l] [/4] [/8] [/b] [/n:<xx>] [/t:<yy>] [/v] [/s]

COMMENTS

This command initializes the directory and file allocation tables on a disk. You must use this command to format all new disks before MS-DOS can use them.

You must specify the drive that you want to format.

Format uses the drive type to determine the default format for a disk.

When you format a hard disk, Format prompts you with the following:

Enter current Volume Label for drive (x:)

Press the Return key if your hard disk does not have a volume label. (Note: If your hard disk has never been formatted before, or if it has a bad boot sector, Format will not prompt you for a volume label.)

If the volume label that you enter does not match the label on the hard disk, Format displays the message:

Invalid Volume ID Format failure

Otherwise Format continues:

WARNING, ALL DATA ON NON-REMOVABLE DISK DRIVE x: WILL BE LOST! Proceed with Format (Y/N)?_

If you want to format your hard disk, type "Y" and press the Return key. If you do not want to format your hard disk, type "N" and press Return.

The /1 switch formats a disk for single-sided use, even if the disk or drive is double-sided. If the drive is double-sided and you do not specify this switch, you will not be able to use it in a single-sided drive.

The /4 switch formats a double-sided disk in a high-capacity disk drive. You should note that you may not be able to read disks formatted with this switch reliably in a single- or double-sided drive.

The /8 switch formats a disk for 8 sectors per track. If you do not specify this switch, Format defaults to either 9 or 15 sectors per track (depending on the type of drive being used). You should note that Format always creates either 9 or 15 sectors per track, but it tells MS-DOS to use only 8 sectors per track if you specify this switch.

The /b switch formats a disk with 8 sectors per track and allocates space for the hidden system files. If you this switch, you can place any version of MS-DOS on the disk by using that version's Sys command. If you do not use the /b switch, you can only place MS-DOS version 3.2 on the disk with the Sys command. You cannot use the /s or the /v switches with the /b switch.

The /n:<xx> option specifies the number of sectors per track that Format uses to format a floppy disk.

The /t:<yy> option specifies the number of tracks that Format places on a floppy disk.

The /v switch causes Format to prompt for a volume label after the disk is formatted. A volume label can be up to 11 characters long and is used to identify the disk. An example of a volume label is PROGRAMS.

If the /s switch is specified, it must be the last switch typed; then Format copies operating system files from the disk in the default drive to the newly formatted disk. The files are copied in the following order:

        IO.SYS
        MSDOS.SYS
        COMMAND.COM

If the operating system isn't on the default drive, Format prompts you to insert a system disk in the default drive (or in drive A if the default drive is a non-removable drive).

When formatting is complete, Format displays a message showing the total disk space, any space marked as defective, the total space used by the operating system (when you use the /s switch), and the space available for your files.

The following table shows which switches you can use for certain types of disks:

Disk Type	Valid Switches
160/180KB	/1 /4 /8 /b /n /t /v /s
320/360KB	/1 /4 /8 /b /n /t /v /s
720KB	/n /t /v /s
1.2KB	/n /t /v /s
hard disk	/v /s

Notes:

Formatting destroys any previously existing data on a disk.

Format ignores drive assignments created with the Assign command.

You should not use Format with drives used in the Assign, Join, or Subst commands.

You cannot Format drives over the network. Format returns the following errorlevel codes:

```
0 = Successful completion
3 = Terminated by user (Control-C)
4 = Fatal error
    (any error other than 0, 3, or 5)
5 = "N" response to hard disk prompt,
    "Proceed with format (Y/N)?"
```

You can check these exit codes by using the errorlevel option with the If batch processing command.

MESSAGES

Attempted write-protect violation
    The disk you are trying to format is write
    protected.

Bad Partition Table
    This message means that there is no DOS
    partition on the hard disk. You must run
    Fdisk to create a DOS partition on your
    hard disk.

Cannot format an ASSIGNed or SUBSTed drive
    You attempted to format a drive which is
    actually mapped to another drive by the
    Assign or Subst command. Run Assign or
    Subst again and clear all drive
    assignments.

Cannot FORMAT a Network drive
    You cannot format drives that are
    redirected over the Network.

Disk unsuitable for system disk
    The Format program detected a bad track on
    the disk where system files should reside.
    You should use this disk to store data
    only.

Drive letter must be specified
    You must specify the name of the drive
    that you want to Format.

Enter current Volume Label for drive (x:)
    Format asks you to enter the current
    volume label for verification before it
    formats the hard disk in the specified
    drive.

Error reading/writing partition table
    Format could not read or write the
    partition table. You should run Fdisk on
    the disk and then try formatting it again.

Format another (Y/N)?
    Format displays this message when it has
    finished formatting the disk in the
    specified drive and is ready to format
    another disk with the same format. Press
    "Y" to continue, and "N" to quit
    formatting. If you accidentally type Y,
    you can abort the format process by typing
    Control-C in response to the "Strike any
    key to begin formatting" message.

Format complete
     Format displays this message when it has
     finished formatting the disk in the
     specified drive.

Format failure
     MS-DOS could not format the disk. This
     message is usually displayed with an
     explanation as to why MS-DOS could not
     format the disk.

Format not supported on drive (x:)
     You cannot use Format to format this
     drive.

Head: (hh) Cylinder: (cc)
     Format displays the current head and
     cylinder number before formatting it.

Incorrect DOS version
     You cannot use Format with an earlier
     version of MS-DOS.

Insert diskette for drive (x:)
and strike ENTER when ready
     You should insert a disk in the
     appropriate drive and press the Return key
     to begin formatting.

Insert DOS disk in drive (x:)
     Format displays this message if you
     specified the /s switch to copy the MS-DOS
     system files, but your default disk does
     not contain them.

Insert new diskette for drive (x:)
and strike ENTER when ready
     This message appears when you are using a
     single drive to format a disk. You should
     insert a disk in the appropriate drive and
     press the Return key to begin formatting.
     If there is any data on the disk, Format
     will destroy it. Press Control-C if you
     don't want to format the disk.

Insufficient memory for system transfer
     Your memory configuration is insufficient
     to transfer the MS-DOS system files IO.SYS
     and MS-DOS.SYS with the /s switch.

Invalid characters in volume label
     The volume label should contain only up to
     11 alphanumeric characters.

Invalid device parameters from device driver
        Format displays this message when the
        number of hidden sectors is not evenly
        divisible by the number of sectors per
        track (i.e., the partition does not start
        on a track boundary). This might happen
        if you tried to format a hard disk that
        previously had been formatted with MS-DOS
        2.x without first running Fdisk.

Invalid drive specification
        You must specify a valid drive.

Invalid parameter
        One of the switches that you have
        specified is wrong.

Invalid Volume ID
        Format displays this message if you enter
        a volume label that doesn't match the
        label on the hard disk you want to format.
        It then quits the format process.

Parameters not compatible
        You have specified switches that are
        mutually exclusive.

Parameters not compatible with fixed disk
        You have used a switch that is not
        compatible with the specified drive.

Parameters not supported
        You have specified parameters that MS-DOS
        does not support.

Parameters not supported by Drive
        Format displays this message when the
        device driver for this drive does not
        support Generic IOCTL function requests.

Re-insert diskette for drive (x:)
        Format displays this message after it has
        read in system files from another disk.

System transferred
        The system files MS-DOS.SYS and IO.SYS
        have been transferred during formatting.

Track 0 bad - disk unusable
> Format can accommodate for defective
> sectors on the disk except for those near
> the beginning. In this case, use another
> disk. This message can also occur when
> you are formatting high density media
> either with the Format /4 switch or in a
> standard density drive.

Volume label (11 characters, ENTER for none)?
> This message appears in response to the
> Format /v switch. Specify a volume label
> or press the Return key to indicate that
> you do not want a volume label for this
> disk.

WARNING, ALL DATA ON NON-REMOVABLE DISK
DRIVE (x:) WILL BE LOST!
Proceed with Format (Y/N)?
> There is data on the hard disk that you
> are trying to format. If you want to lose
> the data and format the disk, press Y (for
> "Yes"). If you do not want the files on
> your hard disk erased, press N (for "No").
> Copy the files onto floppy disks and
> repeat the Format command.

NAME

    Graftabl

<div style="float:right; border:2px solid black;">**E**</div>

PURPOSE

    Loads additional character data into a table in
    memory for use with a color or graphics
    adapter.

SYNTAX

    graftabl

COMMENTS

    Graftabl loads a table of the ASCII characters
    128 through 255 into memory. If you have a
    color or graphics adapter, this table lets you
    display foreign language characters when you
    are in graphics mode.

    After Graftabl loads the character table, it
    displays the message:

    GRAPHICS CHARACTERS LOADED

    You can load the graphics table only once each
    time you start MS-DOS. If you try to load the
    graphics table a second time, Graftabl displays
    the following message:

    GRAPHICS CHARACTERS ALREADY LOADED

Note

This command increases the size of MS-DOS resident in
memory.

NAME

Graphics

E

PURPOSE

Lets you print a graphics display screen on a printer when you are using a color or graphics monitor adapter.

SYNTAX

graphics [<printer>] [/r] [/b]

COMMENTS

The printer option may be one of the following:

COLOR1   Prints on an IBM Personal Computer Color Printer with black ribbon.

COLOR4   Prints on an IBM Personal Computer Color Printer with RGB (red, green, blue, and black) ribbon.

COLOR8   Prints on an IBM Personal Computer Color Printer with CMY (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) ribbon.

COMPACT   Prints on an IBM Personal Computer Compact Printer.

GRAPHICS   Prints on an IBM Personal Graphics Printer.

If you do not specify the printer option, Graphics defaults to the GRAPHICS printer type.

The /r switch prints black and white (as seen on the monitor) on the printer. The default is to print black as white and white as black.

The /b switch prints the background in color. This option is valid for COLOR4 and COLOR8 printers.

To print the screen, press the Shift and Printscreen keys at the same time. If the computer is in 320x200 color graphics mode, and if the printer type is COLOR1 or GRAPHICS, Graphics prints the screen with up to four shades of gray. If the computer is in 640x200 color graphics mode, Graphics prints the screen contents on the paper sideways.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│                                                          │
│                         Note                             │
│                                                          │
│   This command increases the size of MS-DOS resident in  │
│   memory.                                                 │
│                                                          │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

NAME

        Join

PURPOSE

        Joins a disk drive to a specific path.

SYNTAX

        join <drive:> <drive:><pathname> [/d]

COMMENTS

        If the path does not exist, MS-DOS tries to
        make a directory with that path. The path must
        be empty. After you issue the Join command,
        the first drive name becomes invalid, and if
        you try to use it, MS-DOS displays the error
        message, "Invalid drive."

        The Join command removes the distinction that
        physical drives are separately addressable by
        drive letter. This way you can always refer to
        all the directories on a specific drive by one
        pathname. If the path already existed before
        the Join command was typed, it will not be
        usable while the join is in effect.

        You can join a drive only at the root. The
        following command will work:

            join d: c:\memos

        The following command will NOT work:

            join d: c:\memos\june

        To deassign a splice ("unjoin"), use the
        following format:

            join <drive:> /d

        where <drive:> represents the source drive and
        the /d switch turns off the Join command. You
        can specify this switch immediately after the
        drive name.

        If you just type:

            join

        MS-DOS displays the current drives that are
        joined.

MESSAGES

>   Directory not empty
>   You can only join onto a directory that is
>   empty.
>
>   Incorrect number of parameters
>   You specified too many or too few options
>   in the command line.
>
>   Not enough memory
>   There is not enough memory for MS-DOS to
>   run the command.

NAME

    Label

PURPOSE

    Creates   changes,   or   deletes   the   volume
    identification label on a disk.

SYNTAX

    label [<drive:>] [<volume label>]

COMMENTS

    The volume label can be up to 11 characters
    long.   The Label command truncates the volume
    label if you enter more than 11 characters.

    You should not use the following characters   in
    a volume label:

        * ? / \ | . , ; : + = < > [ ]

    The volume label may include spaces, but may
    not include tabs.

    If you do not specify a volume label, Label
    prompts:

        Volume in drive X is xxxxxxxxxxx
        Volume label (11 characters, ENTER   for
        none)? _

    If the disk does not already have a volume
    label, Label prompts:

        Volume in drive X has no label
        Volume label (11 characters, ENTER   for
        none)? _

    Type the volume label that you want and press
    the Return key.

    If you want to delete the volume label, just
    press the Return key. Label prompts with the
    message:

        Delete current volume label (Y/N)?_

    If you press Y, Label deletes the volume label
    on the disk.   Otherwise, the volume label
    remains unchanged.

MESSAGES
          Invalid characters in volume label
          Volume label (ll characters, ENTER for none)?
               You cannot use the characters:

                    * ?   / \ | . , ; : + = < > [ ]

               or the tab character in a volume label.
               Reenter the volume label.

          Cannot LABEL a SUBSTed or ASSIGNed drive
               You cannot label a drive that has been
               assigned via the ASSIGN command or that
               has been substituted with a string via the
               SUBST command.

          Cannot label a network drive
               You cannot label a drive that is shared on
               a network server station.

          Invalid drive specification
               You cannot label a drive that is not
               logically assigned.

NAME
        Mkdir

I

SYNONYM
        MD

PURPOSE
        Makes a new directory.

SYNTAX
        mkdir [<drive:>]<pathname>

COMMENTS
        This command creates a multilevel directory
        structure.   When you   are   in your root
        directory, you can create subdirectories by
        using the Mkdir command. The command:

            mkdir \user

        creates a subdirectory \USER in your root
        directory.   To create a directory named JOE
        under \USER, type:

            mkdir \user\joe

        When you create directories with Mkdir, they
        always appear under your working directory
        unless you explicitly specify a   different
        pathname with Mkdir.

MESSAGES
        Unable to create directory
            MS-DOS could not create the directory you
            specified. Check to see that there is not
            a name conflict. You may have a file by
            the same name, or the disk may be full.

NAME

Mode

PURPOSE

Sets operation modes for devices.

SYNTAX

Parallel printer mode:
mode LPT<n>:[<chars>][,[<lines>][,P]]

Asynchronous communications mode:
mode COM<m>:<baud>[,<parity>[,<databits>
[,<stopbits>[,P]]]]

Redirecting parallel printer output:
mode LPT<n>:=COM<m>:

Display modes
mode <display>
mode [<display>],<shift>[,T]

COMMENTS

For parallel printer modes:

n   Specifies the parallel printer port
         number: 1, 2, or 3.

chars   Specifies either 80 or 132 charac-
         ters per line.

lines   Specifies either 6 or 8 lines per
         inch, vertical spacing.

P   Specifies that Mode will continu-
         ously try to send output to the
         printer if a time-out error occurs.

The default settings are LPT1, with 80
characters per line and 6 lines per inch. You
can break out of a time-out loop by pressing
Control-Break.

For asynchronous communication modes:

m   Specifies the asynchronous commu--
         nications (COM) port number: 1 or
         2.

baud   Specifies   the transmission rate:
            110, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 2400,
            4800, or 9600.   You need to
            specify at least the first two
            digits of each number.

parity   Specifies the parity, either N
            (none), O (odd), or E (even).

databits   Specifies either 7 or 8 bits of
            data.

stopbits   Specifies the number of stopbits,
            either 1 or 2.

P   Specifies that Mode is using the
            COM port for a serial printer,
            and will continuously retry if
            time-out errors occur.

The default settings are COM1 with even parity
and 7 databits.   If <baud> is 110, then the
default number of stop bits is 2, otherwise,
the default is one stop bit.

For redirecting parallel printer output (to an
asynchronous communications port):

n   Specifies the parallel printer
            port number: 1, 2, or 3.

m   Specifies the asynchronous commu-
            nications port number: 1 or 2.

Note: MS-DOS does not check to see if you have
redirected more than one parallel port to a
single COM port.

For setting display modes:

display   Specifies one of: 40, 80, BW40,
            BW80, CO40, CO80, or MONO, where:

            40 indicates 40 characters per
            line.
            80 indicates 80 characters per
            line.
            BW and CO refer to a   color
            graphics monitor adapter with
            (BW) , or with color enabled (CO).
            color disabled MONO specifies a
            monochrome display adapter that
            always has a display width of 80
            characters.

shift   Specifies the direction that you
                want to shift the display, either
                R (right), or L (left).

T   Specifies a test pattern that you
                can use to align the display.

If you specify the T option, Mode asks if the
screen is aligned properly. If you type N,
Mode repeats the shift and asks if the screen
is aligned properly. The command ends when you
type Y.

MESSAGES
        COM port does not exist
            You have specified an invalid COM port.

        Do you see the leftmost 0? (Y/N)
            Mode displays this message to help you
            align the test pattern on your screen.

        Do you see the rightmost 9? (Y/N)
            Mode displays this message to help you
            align the test pattern on your screen.

        Illegal device name
            Your computer does not recognize this
            device name.

        Infinite retry on parallel printer timeout
            Your printer is probably off-line or not
            ready. If the printer appears to be
            ready, you should press the
            Control-Alt-Del keys to reset the
            computer.

        Invalid baud rate specified
            You have specified an incorrect baud rate.
            Valid choices are 110, 150, 300, 600,
            1200, 2400, 4800, and 9600. You must
            specify at least the first two digits of
            the baud rate.

        LPT#: not redirected
            The status of LPT# is UN-REDIRECTED.
            Check to see that you have specified the
            proper options if you wanted to redirect
            this LPT device to a COM device.

        LPT#: redirected to COM#:
            Output on the parallel printer port will
            now be sent to this asynchronous
            communications port.

    LPT#: set for 132
         The parallel printer port has been set for
         132 columns.

    LPT#: set for 80
         The parallel printer port has been set for
         80 columns.

    No COM: ports
         Your computer does not have a COM: port.

    Printer lines per inch set
         Mode has set the number of. lines per inch
         for the printer.

    Resident portion of MODE loaded
         Part of the Mode program is now resident
         in memory.

    Unable to shift Screen
         Mode is unable to shift the test pattern
         on the screen any farther.

NAME

    More

E

PURPOSE

    Sends output to the console one screen at a
    time.

SYNTAX

    more

COMMENTS

    More is a filter that reads from standard input
    (such as a command from your terminal) and
    displays one screen of information at a time.
    The More command then pauses and displays the
    --More-- message at the bottom of your screen.

    Pressing the Return key displays another screen
    of information.   This process continues until
    all the data has been read.

    The More command is useful for. viewing a long
    file one screen at a time. If you type:

        type myfiles.new | more

    MS-DOS displays the file MYFILES.NEW one screen
    at a time.

NAME
        Path

        I

PURPOSE
        Sets a command search path.

SYNTAX
        path [[<drive:>][<pathname>];
        [<drive:>][<pathname>]...]

COMMENTS
        This command allows you to tell MS-DOS which
        directories should be searched for external
        commands after MS-DOS searches your working
        directory. The default value is no path.

        To tell MS-DOS to search the \USER\JOE
        directory for external commands, type:

            path \user\joe

        MS-DOS now searches the \USER\JOE directory for
        external commands until you set another path or
        exit MS-DOS.

        You can tell MS-DOS to search more than one
        path by specifying several pathnames separated
        by semicolons. For example:

            path \user\joe;b:\user\sue;\bin\dev

        tells MS-DOS   to   search   the   directories
        specified by the above pathnames to find
        external   commands.   MS-DOS   searches   the
        pathnames in the order specified in the Path
        command.

        The command, Path, with no options prints the
        current path. If you specify:

            path ;

        MS-DOS sets the NUL path. This means that only
        the working directory is searched for external
        commands.

MESSAGES
        No path
            You typed Path with no options but have
            not set a command search path.

NAME

Print

E

PURPOSE

Prints text files on a lineprinter while you
are processing other commands (usually called
"background printing").

SYNTAX

print [<drive:>][<pathname>] [/d:<device>]
[/b:<size>] [/q:<value>] [/t] [/c] [/p]

COMMENTS

Use the Print command only if you have a
lineprinter attached to your computer. The
following switches are provided with this
command:

/d   DEVICE. Specifies the print device. If
         not specified, the default device is
         PRN. Print prompts for a print device.

The following switches are allowed only the
first time you run the print command after
starting MS-DOS.

/b   BYTES. This switch sets the size in
         bytes of the internal buffer. Increasing
         the value of /b speeds up the Print
         command.

/q   QUEUE. Specifies the number of files
         allowed in the print queue if you want
         more than 10. The minimum value for the
         /q switch is 4; the maximum is 32.

/t   TERMINATE. This switch deletes all files
         in the print queue (those waiting to be
         printed). A message to this effect will
         be printed.

/c   CANCEL. This switch turns on cancel
         mode. The preceding filename and all
         following filenames are removed from the
         print queue.

/p   PRINT. This switch turns on print mode.
         The preceding filename and all following
         filenames are then added to the print
         queue.

If you use Print without options, it displays
the contents of the print queue on your screen
without affecting the queue.

Examples:

    print /t

Empties the print queue.

    print a:temp1.tst /c a:temp2.tst a:temp3.tst

Removes the three files indicated from the print
queue.

    print temp1.tst /c temp2.tst /p temp3.tst

Removes TEMP1.TST from the queue, and adds
TEMP2.TST and TEMP3.TST to the queue.

Note

Each print queue entry may contain a maximum of 64
characters, including the drive name. Therefore, you
may need to change directories if you want to print
files in deep subdirectories.

MESSAGES

    All files canceled
        If you specify the /t ("terminate")
        switch, MS-DOS prints "All files canceled
        by operator" on your printer. If the
        current file being printed is canceled by
        a /c, the message "File canceled by
        operator" is printed.

    Cannot open (filename)
        Either MS-DOS cannot find the specified
        file to print or the file does not exist.
        Check the command for a valid filename.

    Errors on list device indicate that it may be
    offline. Please check it
        Your printer is turned off.

(filename) file not found
> You switched disks when a file was queued up, but before it started to print. Reissue the Print command for that file.

List output is not assigned to a device
> This message is displayed if the "Name of list device" specified to the above prompt is invalid. Subsequent attempts return the same message until you specify a valid device.

Name of list device [PRN:]
> This prompt appears when Print is run the first time and the /d switch is not specified. Any current device may be specified and that device then becomes the Print output device. As shown in the brackets, you can press the Return key so that MS-DOS uses the default list device (PRN).

No files match drive:xxxxxxxx.xxx
> A drive and filename were given for files to add to the queue, but no files match.
>
> NOTE: If there are no files in the queue to match the canceled filename, no error message appears.

Print queue is empty
> There are no files in the print queue.

Print queue is full
> There is room for 10 files in the queue. If you attempt to put more than 10 files in the queue, this message appears on the screen. To add more files to the queue, refer to the /q switch in the list above.

Resident part of Print installed
> This is the first message that MS-DOS displays when you issue the Print command. It means that available memory has been reduced by several thousand bytes to process the Print command along with other processes.

NAME

Prompt

I

PURPOSE

Changes the MS-DOS command prompt.

SYNTAX

prompt [<text>]

COMMENTS

This command allows you to change the MS-DOS
system prompt (for example, A>). If no text is
typed, the prompt is set to the default prompt,
which is the default drive designation. You
can set the prompt to a special prompt, such as
the current time, by using the characters
indicated below.

You can use the following characters in the
prompt command to specify special prompts.
They must all be preceded by a dollar sign ($):

Specify This Character	To Get This Prompt:
$	The '$' character
t	The current time
d	The current date
p	The working directory of the default drive
v	The version number
n	The default drive
g	The '>' character
l	The '<' character
b	The '|' character
—	A Return-line feed sequence
s	A space (leading only)
e	ASCII code X'1B' (escape)

Examples:

    Prompt $p

Sets the drive prompt to <drive:><current
directory>.

    Prompt Time = t_Date = $d

Sets a two-line prompt which prints:
    Time = (current time)
    Date = (current date)

If your terminal has an ANSI escape sequence
driver, you can use escape sequences in your
prompts. For example:

    Prompt $e[7m$n:$e[m

Sets the prompts in inverse video mode and
returns to video mode for other text.

NAME

    Recover

PURPOSE

    Recovers a file or an entire disk containing
    bad sectors.

SYNTAX

    recover [<drive:>]

       or

    recover <drive:>[<pathname>]

COMMENTS

    If a sector on a disk is bad, you can recover
    either the file containing that sector (without
    the bad sector) or the entire disk (if the bad
    sector was in the directory).

    To recover a particular file, type:

        recover <filename>

    This causes MS-DOS to read the file sector by
    sector and to skip the bad sector(s). When
    MS-DOS finds the bad sector(s), the sector(s)
    are marked and MS-DOS will no longer allocate
    your data to that sector.

    To recover a disk, type

        recover <drive:>

    where <drive:> is the letter of the drive
    containing the disk to be recovered.

MESSAGES

    File not found
        MS-DOS cannot find the file that you
        specified. Check to see that the pathname
        is accurate and that the file exists in
        the directory you specified.

    (xxxx) of (xxxx) bytes recovered
        This message tells you the number of bytes
        that MS-DOS was able to recover from the
        disk.

Warning – directory full
     The root directory is too full for Recover
     processing. Delete some files in the root
     directory to free space.

NAME

Ren (Rename)

I

SYNONYM

Rename

PURPOSE

Changes the name of a file.

SYNTAX

ren [<drive:>]<pathname> <pathname>

COMMENTS

You must supply a drive name if the file resides on other than the default drive. Any drive name for the third option (pathname) is ignored. You cannot rename files across drives.

Wildcards may be used in either option. All files matching the first filename are renamed. If wildcards appear in the second filename, corresponding character positions will not be changed. For example, the following command changes the extension of all filenames ending in .LST to .PRN:

ren *.lst *.prn

In the next example, Ren renames the file CHAP10 on drive B to PART10:

ren b:chap10 part10

The file remains on drive B.

MESSAGES

File not found
You tried to rename a file to a name already present in the directory.

NAME

Replace

E

PURPOSE

Updates previous versions of files.

SYNTAX

replace [<drive:>]<pathname> [<drive:>] [<path>]
[/a] [/d] [/p] [/r] [/s] [/w]

COMMENTS

The Replace command lets you easily update
files on your hard disk with new versions of
software.

Replace performs two functions:

1. By default, it replaces files in the target
   directory with files in the source
   directory that have the same name. You may
   use wildcards in source filenames.

2. When you specify the /a switch, Replace
   adds files that exist in the source
   directory (but NOT in the target directory)
   to the target directory.

The /a switch adds new files to the target
directory instead of replacing existing ones.
You may not use this switch with either the /d
or /s switches.

The /d switch replaces files in the target
directory only if the source files are newer
than the corresponding target files. This
switch is incompatible with the /a switch.

The /p switch prompts you before replacing a
target file or adding a source file.

Replace (filename) ? (Y/N) _

The /r switch replaces read-only files as well
as unprotected files. If you do not specify
this switch, any attempt to replace a read-only
file causes an error and stops the replace
process.

The /s switch causes Replace to search all subdirectories of the target directory while it replaces matching files. This switch is incompatible with the /a switch. Replace never searches subdirectories in the source path.

The /w switch waits for the user to hit any key before replacing files. If you do not specify this switch, Replace begins replacing or adding files immediately.

As files are replaced or added, Replace displays the filenames on the screen; then at the conclusion of the replace operation, it displays a summary line:

        NNN file(s) added/replaced
                  or
        No files added/replaced

You cannot use the Replace command to update hidden files or system files.

EXAMPLES

Replacing Files:

Suppose your hard disk, drive C, contains several files of client names and phone numbers. To replace these files with the latest version of this file that exists on the disk in drive A, you would type:

        replace a:\phones.cli c:\ /s

This command replaces every file on drive C that is named PHONES.CLI with the file PHONES.CLI from the root directory on drive A.

Adding Files:

Suppose you want to add some new printer device drivers to a directory called C:\MSTOOLS, which already contains several printer driver files for a word processor. To do this, you would type:

        replace a:*.prd c:\mstools /a

This command adds any files from the default directory of drive A with an extension of PRD (that do not currently exist in the \MSTOOLS directory on drive C) to C:\MSTOOLS.

If Replace encounters an error, it returns one of the following errorlevel codes:

1	Command line error
2	File Not Found
3	Path Not found
5	Access Denied
8	Insufficient Memory
15	Invalid Drive
Other	Standard MS-DOS error

You can test for these codes by using the errorlevel option with the batch processing If command.

MESSAGES

Access denied (filename)
        You tried to replace a write-protected or locked file.

File cannot be copied onto itself (filename)
        You attempted to copy a file to itself.

Insufficient disk space
        There is not enough room on the target disk for the replace operation.

Insufficient memory
        You do not have enough memory available to use the Replace command.

Invalid drive specification (x:)
        Drive X does not exist.

Invalid parameter
        You used an invalid parameter or switch.

No files added/replaced
        The Replace command did not add or replace any files.

No files found (filename)
        Replace could not find matching source or target files.

Parameters not compatible
        You have specified switches that are incompatible with each other.

Path not Found (path)
        The source or target path did not exist.

Path too long
        The path name you specified was too long.
        You may have to change directories to
        replace files in deep subdirectories.

Press any key to begin adding files
        When you specify the /w switch, Replace
        displays this message to prompt you to
        start replacing files.

Source path required
        You did not specify a source path for
        Replace.

Unexpected DOS Error (NNN)
        An unexpected error occurred, where (NNN)
        is the MS-DOS error number.

NAME

    Restore

PURPOSE

    Restores one or more files that were backed up
using either the Microsoft or the IBM Backup
command.

SYNTAX

    restore <drive:> [<drive:>][<pathname>][/s][/p]
[/a:<date>] [/b:<date>] [/e:<time>] [/L:<time>]
[/m] [/n]

COMMENTS

    The Restore command can restore files from
disks of different media. For example, you can
restore files from:

    Hard disk to floppy disk
    Floppy disk to floppy disk
    Floppy disk to hard disk
    Hard disk to hard disk

    The first option you specify is the drive name
for the disk containing the backed up files.
The second and third options are the drive and
pathname of the files you want to restore.

    This restore program and the one supplied by
IBM are compatible except for the /b, /a, /e,
/L, /m, and /n switches. You can use the
following switches with the MS-DOS Restore
command:

/s   Restore subdirectories also.

/p   If any hidden or read-only files match
    the file specification, prompt for
    permission to restore them.

/b   Restore only those files that were last
    modified on or before the given date.

/a   Restore only those files that were last
    modified on or after the given date.

/e   Restore only those files that were last
    modified at or earlier than the given
    time.

/L   Restore only those files that were last
            modified at or later than the given
            time.

/m   Restore only those files that have been
            modified since the last backup.

/n   Restore only those files that no longer
            exist on the destination disk.   :

If you are restoring files that were backed up
using a previous version of MS-DOS, you should
use the /p switch.   This switch prompts you
before restoring the MS-DOS system files.   You
should type "N" when Restore asks if you want
to restore these files to avoid destroying the
newer version of MS-DOS on your disk.

The Restore program returns the   following
errorlevel codes:

0   Normal completion
1   No files were found to restore
2   Some files not restored due to sharing
     conflicts
3   Terminated by user
4   Terminated due to error

You can use the batch processing If command to
perform   error   processing   based   on   the
errorlevel returned by Restore.

NAME

Rmdir (Remove Directory)

SYNONYM

rd

PURPOSE

Removes a directory from a multilevel directory
structure.

SYNTAX

rmdir <pathname>

COMMENTS

This command removes a directory <u>that is empty</u>
except for the . and .. shorthand symbols.
You must delete all files in the directory
first.

Example:

To remove the \USER\JOE directory, first issue
a Dir command for that path to ensure that the
directory is empty. Then type:

rmdir \user\joe

The directory will be deleted from the
directory structure.

NAME

Set

PURPOSE

Sets one string value in the environment equal to another string for use in later programs.

SYNTAX

set [<string=string>]

COMMENTS

This command is meaningful only if you want to set values that will be used by programs you have written.

When MS-DOS sees a Set command, it inserts the entire string into a part of memory reserved for "environment" strings. If the name already exists in the environment, it is replaced by the new string. If you type the Set command with only the first string, the associated string name is removed from the environment. If you type Set with no options, MS-DOS displays the current environment settings.

An application program can get a listing of all environment values that have been set by examining its environment. (Environments are passed in the Program Segment Prefix). Refer to Chapter 4, "MS-DOS Control Blocks and Work Areas," in the MS-DOS Programmer's Reference Manual for more information.

The Set command can also be used in batch processing. In this way, you can define your replaceable parameters with names instead of numbers. If your batch file contains the statement "LINK %FILE%", you can set the name that MS-DOS will use for that variable with the Set command. The command

set file=domore

replaces the %FILE% parameter with the filename DOMORE. Therefore, you do not need to edit each batch file to change the replaceable parameter names. Note that when you use text (instead of numbers) as replaceable parameters, the name must be ended by a percent sign.

Examples:

The command

     set TTY=VT52

sets your TTY value to VT52 until you change it
with another Set command. If you just type:

     set

MS-DOS displays the current environment
strings.

NAME
        Share

PURPOSE
        Installs file sharing and locking.

SYNTAX
        share [/f:<space>][/L:<locks>]

COMMENTS
        The Share command is only used when networking
        is active. It is included in the AUTOEXEC.BAT
        file to install shared files. Refer to the
        Microsoft Networks Manager's Guide to learn
        about shared files.

        Use the /f:<space> switch to allocate file
        space (in bytes) for the area MS-DOS uses to
        record filesharing information. Each file that
        is open needs the length of the full filename
        plus 11 bytes (the average pathname is 20
        bytes). The default value for the /f switch is
        2048 bytes.

        The L:<locks> switch allocates the number of
        locks you want to allow. The default value for
        the /L switch is 20 locks.

        Once you have used the Share command in an
        MS-DOS session, all read and write rquests are
        checked by MS-DOS.

        Example:

        The following example loads file sharing and
        uses the default values for the /f and /L
        switches:

            share

MESSAGES
        Incorrect parameter
            One of the options you specified is wrong.

        Not enough memory
            There is not enough memory for MS-DOS to
            run the command.

        Share Already Installed
            You can install Share only once.

NAME

    Sort

PURPOSE

    Sort reads standard input, sorts the data, then
    writes it to your terminal screen, a file, or
    to another device.

SYNTAX

    sort [<drive:>] [<pathname>] [/r] [/+<n>]

COMMENTS

    Sort can be used, for example, to alphabetize a
    file by a certain column. There are two
    switches which allow you to select options:

    /r   Reverse the sort; that is, sort
            from Z to A.

    /+<n>   Sort starting with column n where
            n is some number. If you do not
            specify this switch, Sort will
            begin sorting from column 1.

    Examples:

    This command reads the file UNSORT.TXT,
    reverses the sort, and then writes the output
    to a file named SORT.TXT:

        sort /r <unsort.txt> sort.txt

    The following command pipes the output of the
    directory command to the Sort filter. The Sort
    filter sorts the directory listing starting
    with column 14 (this is the column in the
    directory listing that contains the file size),
    then sends the output to the screen. The
    result of this command is a directory sorted by
    file size:

        dir | sort /+14

The command:

        dir | sort /+14 | more

does the same thing as the command in the
previous example, except that the More filter
gives you a chance to read the sorted directory
one screen at a time.

NAME

Subst

PURPOSE

Substitutes a string alias for a pathname.

SYNTAX

subst [<drive:>] [<pathname>][/d]

COMMENTS

The Subst command creates or deletes a "virtual
drive" by associating a pathname with a drive
letter.

When MS-DOS sees a drive that was created with
the Subst command, it replaces the reference
with the new pathname.

If you type

subst

MS-DOS displays the names of the "virtual
drives" in effect.

Use the /d switch to delete an associated drive
or pathname. You can specify this switch
immediately after the drive name.

Example:

The command:

subst z: b:\usr\fred\forms

creates a virtual drive Z for the pathname
"b:\usr\fred\forms." Now, instead of typing the
full pathname, you can get to this directory by
simply typing z:.

MESSAGES

Incorrect number of parameters
You specified too many or too few options
in the command.

Not enough memory
There is not enough memory for MS-DOS to
run the command.

NAME

Sys (System)

PURPOSE

Transfers the MS-DOS system files from the disk
in the default drive to the disk in the
specified drive.

SYNTAX

sys <drive:>

COMMENTS

Sys is normally used to update the system or to
place the system on a formatted disk that
contains no files. You must type a drive
letter with this command.

If IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS are on the target disk,
they must take up the same amount of space on
the disk as the new system will need. This
means that you cannot transfer system files
from an MS-DOS 2.0 disk to an MS-DOS 1.1 disk.
You must reformat the MS-DOS 1.1 disk with the
MS-DOS Format command before the Sys command
will work. The target disk must be completely
blank or already have the system files IO.SYS
and MSDOS.SYS. The transferred files are
copied in the following order:

        IO.SYS
        MSDOS.SYS

IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS are both hidden files that
do not appear when you type the Dir command.
COMMAND.COM (the command processor) is <u>not</u>
transferred. Use the Copy command to transfer
COMMAND.COM.

MESSAGES

No room for system on destination disk
There is not enough room on the target
disk for the IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS files.

Incompatible system size
The system files IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS do
not take up the same amount of space on
the target disk as the new system will
need.

NAME
    Time

PURPOSE
    Displays and sets the time.

SYNTAX
    time [<hours>:<minutes>]

COMMENTS
    If you just type "time", the following message
    is displayed:

        Current time is (hh):(mm):(ss).(cc)
        Enter new time:_

    Press the Return key if you do not want to
    change the time shown. If you want to change
    the time after you have started MS-DOS, (for
    example, to 8:20 a.m.), type

        time 8:20

    in response to the MS-DOS prompt. The new time
    must be entered using numbers only; letters
    are not allowed. The allowed options are:

        <hours> = 00-24
        <minutes> = 00-59

    Separate the hour and minute entries by a
    colon. You do not have to type the <ss>
    (seconds) or <cc> (hundredths of seconds).

    If you do not type a valid time, MS-DOS
    displays the message:

        Invalid time
        Enter new time:_

    MS-DOS then waits for you to type a valid time.

    Like the Date command, the Time Command format
    can be changed with the Country command in the
    CONFIG.SYS file. Refer to Appendix D, "How to
    Configure Your System," for more information.

NAME

    Tree

E

PURPOSE

    Displays the path (and optionally list the
    contents) of each directory and subdirectory on
    the given drive.

SYNTAX

    tree [<drive:>] [/f]

COMMENTS

    The Tree command lists the full path of each
    directory, along with the names of each of
    their subdirectories.

    The <drive:> option specifies the drive that
    you want to want to use. If you do not specify
    this option, Tree uses the default drive.

    The /f switch causes Tree to display the names
    of the files in each directory.

    Example:
    If you want to print a list of the directory
    and file names on the disk in drive B, you can
    use the command:

        tree b: /f > prn

MESSAGES

    No subdirectories exist
        The disk in the drive you specified does
        not contain subdirectories.

    Invalid path
        You specified an invalid path.

    Invalid drive specification
        The drive name that you specified does not
        exist or is invalid.

    Invalid parameter
        The /f switch is the only valid parameter
        for Tree.

    Incorrect DOS version
        You are using the Tree command with the
        wrong version of MS-DOS. Insert the
        correct version of DOS and try the command
        again.

NAME
        Type

```
I
```

PURPOSE
        Displays the contents of a file on the screen.

SYNTAX
        type [<drive:>]<filename>

COMMENTS
        Use this command to view a file without
        modifying it.   (Use Dir to find the name of a
        file and EDLIN to change the contents of a
        file.) Note that when you use Type to display a
        file with tabs in it, all tabs are expanded to
        8 spaces wide.   A display of binary files
        causes control characters (such as Control-Z)
        to be sent to your computer, including bells,
        form feeds, and escape sequences.

NAME
        Ver

PURPOSE
        Prints MS-DOS version number.

SYNTAX
        ver

COMMENTS
        If you want to know what version of MS-DOS you
        are using, type:

            ver

        The version number will be displayed on your
        screen.

NAME

    Verify

I

PURPOSE

    Turns the verify switch on or off when writing
    to disk.

SYNTAX

    verify [ON]

      or

    verify [OFF]

COMMENTS

    This command has the same purpose as the /v
    switch in the Copy command. If you want to
    verify that all files are written correctly to
    disk, you can use the Verify command to tell
    MS-DOS to verify that your files are intact (no
    bad sectors, for example). MS-DOS will perform
    a Verify each time you write data to a disk.
    You will receive an error message only if
    MS-DOS was unable to successfully write your
    data to disk.

    Verify ON remains in effect until you change it
    in a program (by a Set Verify system call), or
    until you type "Verify OFF".

    If you want to know what the current setting of
    Verify is, type:

        verify

    with no options.

NAME

Vol (Volume)

$$\boxed{I}$$

PURPOSE

Displays disk volume label, if it exists.

SYNTAX

vol [<drive:>]

COMMENTS

This command prints the volume label of the
disk in a specific drive. If you do not type a
drive letter, MS-DOS prints the volume label of
the disk in the default drive.

MESSAGES

Volume in drive x has no label
        The disk in the drive does not have a
        volume label.

NAME

Xcopy

PURPOSE

Copies files and directories, including lower level directories if they exist.

SYNTAX

xcopy [<drive:>][<path>]<filename>
[<drive:>][<path>][<filename>] [/a]
[/d:<mm-dd-yy>] [/e] [/m] [/p] [/s] [/v] [/w]

COMMENTS

The first drive, path, and filename parameters specify the file or directory that you want to copy. The second drive, path, and filename parameters specify the target. You must include at least one of the source parameters. If you omit the target parameters, Xcopy assumes you want to copy the files to the default directory.

If you do not specify the path option, Xcopy uses the default directory. The default filename is "*.*".

The /a switch copies source files that have their archive bit set. It does not modify the archive bit of the source file. Refer to the Attrib command for information on how to set the archive attribute.

The /d switch copies source files that you modified on or after the date specified by <mm-dd-yy>. Note that the date format may vary depending on the country code that you are using.

The /e switch copies any subdirectories, even if they are empty. You must use this switch with the /s switch.

The /m switch is similar to the /a switch since it copies archived files only; however, it turns off the archive bit in the source file. Refer to the Attrib command for information on how to set the archive attribute.

The /p switch prompts you with "(Y/N?)" allowing you to confirm whether you want to create each target file.

The /s switch copies directories and lower level subdirectories unless they are empty. If you omit this switch, Xcopy works within a single directory.

The /v switch causes Xcopy to verify each file as it is written to the target to make sure that the target files are identical to the source files.

The /w switch causes Xcopy to wait before it starts copying files. Xcopy displays the message:

Press any key when ready to start copying files

You must press a key to continue, or press Control-C to abort the Xcopy command.

Example:

Because the Diskcopy command copies disks track-by-track, it requires your source and target disks to have the same format. So if you want to make a copy of a disk that contains files in subdirectories to a target disk that has a different format, you must use the Xcopy command. For example:

xcopy a: b: /s /e

copies all of the files and subdirectories (including any empty subdirectories) on the disk in drive A to the disk in drive B.

Note

The Xcopy command may prompt you to specify whether the target is a file or a directory. If you do not want to receive this prompt, type:

copy /b xcopy.exe mcopy.exe

This creates a new command called MCOPY.EXE. Now you can use the Mcopy command the same way you use the Xcopy command, but Mcopy automatically determines whether the target is a file or directory.

Mcopy uses the following rules for copying files:

1. If the source is a directory, the target is a directory.

2. If the source includes multiple files, the target is a directory.

3. If you append a backslash (\) to the end of the target name, the target is a directory. For example:

        xcopy payroll a:\workers\

    creates the directory A:\WORKERS if it doesn't already exist, and copies the file PAYROLL to it.

When correctly written programs exit back to DOS, they return an error code: 0 if no error occurred, or a value greater than zero if there was a problem. This error code can be tested in batch files, and it allows batch programmers to "branch" to an error-handling routine in the batch file.

If Xcopy encounters an error, it returns one of the following errorlevel codes:

0   Copy without error
1   No files found to copy
2   Control-C entered by user to terminate Xcopy
4   Initialization error
        There is not enough memory--invalid drive or command line syntax, file not found, or path not found.
5   Int 24 error occurred
        The user aborted from INT 24 error reading or writing disk.

You can test for these codes by using the errorlevel option with the batch processing If command.

MESSAGES

Access denied
       You tried to overwrite a read-only file.

Cannot perform a cyclic copy
       When you are using the /s switch, you may
       not specify a target that is a subdirectory
       of the source.

Cannot XCOPY to a reserved device
       You cannot copy files to a device.

Cannot XCOPY from a reserved device
       You cannot copy from a device to a file.

Does (name) specify a file name
or directory name on the target
(F = file D = directory)?
       Xcopy displays this prompt if the target
       directory does not exist.

File cannot be copied onto itself
       You have specified the same source and
       target.

File creation error
       Xcopy could not create the file.   Run the
       Chkdsk program to determine if the disk is
       full.

Incorrect DOS version
       You must run the Xcopy command with the
       correct version of MS-DOS.

Invalid date
       You entered an illegal date. Refer to the
       Date command for information on how to enter
       the date.

Invalid drive specification
       You specified a drive name that does not
       exist.

Invalid parameter
       You specified an incorrect parameter. Check
       the syntax for this command and try again.

Invalid path
       The source path described a non-existent
       subdirectory.

Invalid number of parameters
       You specified too many or too few
       parameters. Check the syntax for this
       command and try again.

Path too long
> The path name you specified was too long. You may have to change directories to replace files in deep subdirectories.

Reading source file(s)...
> Xcopy is now reading the source files that you specified.

Unable to create directory
> MS-DOS cannot create a directory if a file with the same name already exists. Check to see that you typed the directory name correctly, or rename the file or directory if necessary.

3.4 BATCH PROCESSING COMMANDS

The following commands are called batch processing commands.
They can add flexibility and power to your batch programs.
The commands discussed are Echo, For, Goto, If, Pause and
Shift.

If you are not writing batch programs, you do not need to
read this section.

NAME

      Echo

I

PURPOSE

      Turns batch echo feature on and off.

SYNTAX

      echo [ON]

       or

      echo [OFF]

       or

      echo [<message>]

COMMENTS

      Normally, commands in a batch file are
      displayed ("echoed") on the screen when they
      are seen by MS-DOS. The command:

         echo off

      turns off this feature. Echo ON turns the echo
      back on.

      If ON or OFF are not specified, the current
      setting is displayed.

      Echo <message> is only useful if Echo is off
      and you are using a batch file. By typing Echo
      and a message in your batch file, you can print
      messages on the screen.

NAME

    For

PURPOSE

    Command extension used in batch and interactive
    file processing.

SYNTAX

    for %%<c> in <set> do <command>
    (for batch processing)

    for %<c> in <set> do <command>
    (for interactive processing)

COMMENTS

    <c> can be any character except 0,1,2,3,..,9 to
    avoid   confusion   with   the   %0-%9   batch
    parameters.

        <set> is (<item>*)

    The %%<c> variable is set sequentially to each
    member   of   <set>,   and   then   <command>   is
    evaluated.   If   a   member   of   <set>   is   an
    expression   involving   *   and/or   ?,   then   the
    variable is set to each matching   pattern   from
    disk.   In this case, only one such item may be
    in the set, and any item besides the   first   is
    ignored.

    Examples:

        for %%f in (*.asm) do masm %%f;

        for %%f in (report memo address) do del %%f

    The first example binds the variable   named   %f
    to   files   ending   with   *.asm   in   the working
    directory.   It then executes the command:

        masm <filename>

    where <filename> could be: bigfile.asm
                                 sorter.asm
                                 list.asm

    The second example binds the variable %f to the
    files named report, memo, and address.   It then
    deletes each of these files.

The '%%' is needed so that after batch parameter (%0-%9) processing is done, there is one '%' left. If only '%f' were there, the batch parameter processor would see the '%', look at 'f', decide that '%f' was an error (bad parameter reference) and throw out the '%f', so that the command For would never see it. If the For is <u>not</u> in a batch file, then only one '%' should be used.

MESSAGES

       For cannot be nested
          Nesting of For statements is illegal.

NAME
    Goto

PURPOSE
    Command extension used in batch file processing.

SYNTAX
    goto <label>

COMMENTS
    Goto causes commands to be taken from the batch file beginning with the line after the <label> definition. If no label has been defined, the current batch file will terminate.

    Example:

        :one
        rem first program
        goto two

        .
        .
        .

        :two
        rem second program

    sends the program processor to the label named "two".

    Starting any line in a batch file with a colon (:) causes the line to be ignored by batch processing. The characters following Goto define a label.

NAME
        If

PURPOSE
        Command extension used in batch   file
        processing.

SYNTAX
        if <condition> <command>

COMMENTS
        The parameter <condition> is one of the
        following:

    ERRORLEVEL <number>
        True if, and only if, the previous program
        executed by COMMAND.COM had an exit code
        of <number> or higher. (An exit code is
        set by a specific program. It is returned
        by the operating system after the program
        has finished. Later program tasks may be
        performed based on the value of this
        number.)

    <string1> == <string2>
        True if, and only if, <string1>   and
        <string2> are identical after parameter
        substitution.   Strings   may   not   have
        embedded separators.

    EXIST <filename>
        True if, and only if, <filename> exists.

    NOT <condition>
        True if, and only if, <condition> is
        false.

        The If   statement   allows   conditional
        execution.   of   commands.   When   the
        <condition> is true, then the <command> is
        executed.   Otherwise, the <command> is
        ignored.

        Examples:

            if not exist datal echo can't find file

            if not errorlevel 3 link $1,,;

NAME

   Pause

PURPOSE

   Suspends execution of the batch file.

SYNTAX

   pause [<comment>]

COMMENTS

   When a batch file is running, you may need to
   change disks or perform some other action.
   Pause suspends execution until you press any
   key, except Control-C.

   When the command processor encounters Pause, it
   prints:

      Strike a key when ready . . .

   If you press Control-C, MS-DOS displays the
   following message:

      Terminate batch job (Y/N)?

   If you type Y in response to this prompt, the
   batch file ends and control returns to the
   operating system. Therefore, Pause can be used
   to break a batch file into pieces, allowing you
   to end the batch command file at any
   intermediate point.

   The comment is optional and may be typed on the
   same line as Pause. You may also want to
   prompt the user of the batch file with some
   meaningful message when the batch file pauses.
   For example, you may want to change disks in
   one of the drives. An optional prompt message
   may be given in such cases. The comment prompt
   will be displayed before the "Strike a key"
   message.

NAME

Rem (Remark)

I

PURPOSE

Displays remarks which are on the same line as the Rem command in a batch file during execution of that batch file.

SYNTAX

rem [<comment>]

COMMENTS

The only separators allowed in the comment are the space, tab, and comma.

Example:

```
1:   Rem  This file checks new disks
2:   Rem  It is named NEWDISK.BAT
3:   Pause  Insert new disk in drive B
4:   Format B:/s
6:   Chkdsk B:
```

You can use Rem without a comment in your file to add spacing for readability.

NAME

Shift

I

PURPOSE

Allows access to more than 10 replaceable parameters in batch file processing.

SYNTAX

shift

COMMENTS

Usually, command files are limited to handling 10 parameters, %0 through %9. To allow access to more than ten parameters, use Shift to change the command line parameters. For example:

```
if:     %0 = "tan"
        %1 = "bar"
        %2 = "name"
        %3...%9 are empty
```

then a Shift results in the following:

```
        %0 = "bar"
        %1 = "name"
        %2...%9 are empty
```

If there are more than 10 parameters given on a command line, those that appear after the 10th (%9) will be shifted one at a time into %9 by successive shifts.

Note

There is no backward shift. Once Shift is executed, the 0 parameter (%0) that existed before the shift cannot be recovered.

Chapter 4
MS-DOS Editing and Function Keys

CHAPTER 4

MS-DOS EDITING AND FUNCTION KEYS

4.1 SPECIAL MS-DOS EDITING KEYS

The special editing keys deserve particular emphasis because
they depart from the way in which most operating systems
handle command input. You do not have to type the same
sequences of keys repeatedly, because the last command line
is automatically placed in a special storage area called a
template.

By using the template and the special editing keys, you can
take advantage of the following MS-DOS features:

1. A command line can be instantly repeated by
    pressing two keys.

2. If you make a mistake in the command line, you can
    edit it and retry without having to retype the
    entire command line.

3. A command line that is similar to a preceding
    command line can be edited and executed with a
    minimum of typing by pressing a special editing
    key.

The relationship between the command line and the template
is shown in Figure 4.1.

Figure 4.1.   Command Line and Template

As seen in Figure 4.1, you type a command to MS-DOS on the
command line. When you press the Return key, the command is
automatically sent to the command processor (COMMAND.COM)
for execution. At the same time, a copy of this command is
sent to the template. You can now recall the command or
modify it with MS-DOS special editing keys.

Table 4.1 contains a complete list of the special editing
keys. Each of these keys is more fully described in Chapter
5, "The Line Editor (EDLIN)."

Note

The keys on your keyboard may not correspond to the
specific keys in the following examples. Therefore,
these MS-DOS editing keys will be referred to by
FUNCTION rather than by name. When an example says
to press the <SKIP1> key, find the key on your
keyboard that corresponds to the "skip one
character" editing function and press it.

Some functions may require you to press two keys.
Consult the operating manual for your terminal to
determine which keys correspond to the MS-DOS editing
functions described below.

You may wish to write in the keys on your keyboard that
correspond to the editing keys described in the following
table. Space is provided to do this.

Table 4.1 Special Editing Functions

Key	Editing Function	Your Keyboard
<COPY1>	Copies one character from the template to the command line	
<COPYUP>	Copies characters up to the character specified in the template and puts these characters on the command line	
<COPYALL>	Copies all remaining characters in the template to the command line	
<SKIP1>	Skips over (does not copy) a character in the template	
<SKIPUP>	Skips over (does not copy) the characters in the template up to the character specified	
<VOID>	Voids the current input; leaves the template unchanged	
<INSERT>	Enters/exits insert mode	
<NEWLINE>	Makes the new line the new template	
<Control-Z>	Puts a Control-Z (1AH) end-of-file character in the new template	

Examples:

If you type:

     dir prog.com

MS-DOS displays information about the file PROG.COM on your
screen.   The command line (dir prog.com) is also saved in
the template. To repeat the command, just press two keys:
<COPYALL> and Return.

The repeated command is displayed on the screen as you type,
as shown below:

     <COPYALL>dir prog.com<RETURN>

Notice that pressing the <COPYALL> key causes the contents
of the template to be copied to the command line; pressing
the Return key causes the command line to be sent to the
command processor for execution.

If you want to display information about a file named
PROG.ASM, you can use the contents of the template and type:

     <COPYUP>c

Typing <COPYUP>C copies all characters from the template to
the command line, up to but not including C. MS-DOS
displays:

     DIR PROG._

Note that the underline is your cursor. Now type:

     asm

The result is:

     DIR PROG.ASM_

The command line DIR PROG.ASM is now in the template and
ready to be sent to the command processor for execution.   To
run the command, press the Return key.

Now, assume that you want to run the following command:

     TYPE PROG.ASM

To do this, type:

     type <INSERT> <COPYALL><RETURN>

Notice that when you are typing, the characters are entered
directly into the command line and overwrite corresponding

characters in the template. This automatic replacement feature is turned off when you press the <INSERT> key. Thus, the characters "TYPE" replace the characters "DIR " in the template. To insert a space between "TYPE" and "PROG.ASM", you pressed <INSERT> and then the Spacebar. Finally, to copy the rest of the template to the command line, you pressed <COPYALL> and then the Return key. The command TYPE PROG.ASM has been processed by MS-DOS, and the template becomes TYPE PROG.ASM.

If you had misspelled TYPE as BYTE, a command error would have occurred. Still, instead of throwing away the whole command, you could save the misspelled line before you press the Return key by creating a new template with the <NEWLINE> key:

        BYTE PROG.ASM<NEWLINE>

You could then edit this error by typing:

        T<COPY1>P<COPYALL>

The <COPY1> key copies a single character from the template to the command line. The resultant command line is then the command that you want:

        TYPE PROG.ASM

As an alternative, you can use the same template containing BYTE PROG.ASM and then use the <SKIP1> and <INSERT> keys to get the same result:

        <SKIP1><SKIP1><COPY1><INSERT>YP<COPYALL>

To illustrate how the command line is affected as you type, examine the keys pressed on the left; their effect on the command line is shown on the right:

<SKIP1>	—	Skips over 1st template character
<SKIP1>	—	Skips over 2nd template character
<COPY1>	T	Copies 3rd template character
<INSERT>YP	TYP .	Inserts two characters
<COPYALL>	TYPE PROG.ASM	Copies rest of template

Notice that <SKIP1> does not affect the command line. It affects the template by deleting the first character. Similarly, <SKIPUP> deletes characters in the template, up to, but not including, a given character.

These special editing keys can add to your effectiveness at the keyboard. The next section describes control character functions that can also help when you are typing commands.

4.2 CONTROL CHARACTER FUNCTIONS

A control character function is a function that affects the command line. You have already learned about Control-C and Control-S. Other control character functions are described below. (Note that some control character functions may not apply to your computer.)

Remember that when you type a control character sequence, such as Control-C, you must hold down the control key and then press the C key.

Table 4.2 Control Character Functions

Control Character	Function
Control-C	Aborts current command.
Control-H	Removes last character from command line, and erases character from terminal screen.
Control-J	Inserts physical end-of-line, but does not empty command line. Use the Linefeed key to extend the current logical line beyond the physical limits of the terminal screen.
Control-N	Echoes output to a lineprinter.
Control-P	Sends terminal output to a lineprinter.
Control-S	Suspends output display on the screen. Press Control-S to resume.
Control-X	Cancels the current line; empties the command line; and then outputs a backslash (\), return, and linefeed. The template used by the special editing commands is not affected.

Chapter 5
.EXE File Structure and Loading

CHAPTER 5

THE LINE EDITOR (EDLIN)

5.1 INTRODUCTION

In this chapter, you will learn how to use EDLIN, the line editor program. You can use EDLIN to create, change, and display files, whether they are program or text files.

You can use EDLIN to:

- Create new files and save them on disk.

- Update existing files and save both the updated and original files.

- Delete, edit, insert, and display lines in files.

- Search for, delete, or replace text within one or more lines in a file.

EDLIN divides all text into lines, and each line can have up to 253 characters. EDLIN gives each line a line number. Although you will see these line numbers on the screen when you use EDLIN, they are not actually saved with the file.

When you insert lines, the line numbers after the inserted text are adjusted automatically. When you delete lines in a file, all line numbers following the deleted text are renumbered automatically. Lines are always numbered consecutively in your file.

5.2 HOW TO START EDLIN

To start EDLIN, type:

    EDLIN <filename>

If you are creating a new file, the filename should be the name or path of the file you wish to create. If EDLIN does

not find this file on a disk drive, EDLIN will create a new
file with the name or path you specify. If you are creating
a new file, you will see this when EDLIN starts:

    New file
    *

Notice that the prompt for EDLIN is an asterisk (*).

You can now type lines of text into your new file. To begin
entering text, you must type an I (Insert) command to insert
lines. The I command is discussed later in this chapter.

If you want to edit an existing file, <filespec> should be
the name of the file you want to edit. When EDLIN finds the
file you specify, the file will be loaded into memory. If
the entire file can be loaded, EDLIN will display the
following message:

    End of input file
    *

You can then edit the file using EDLIN editing commands.

If the file is too large to be loaded into memory, EDLIN
will load lines until memory is 3/4 full, then display the *
prompt. You can then edit the portion of the file that is
in memory.

To edit the rest of the file, you must save some of the
edited lines on disk to free memory; then EDLIN can load
the unedited lines from disk into memory. Refer to the
Write and Append commands in this chapter for instructions
on editing large files.

Do not try to edit a file with a filename extension of .BAK
because EDLIN assumes that any .BAK file is a backup file.
If you need to edit such a file, rename the file with
another extension (using the MS-DOS Ren command discussed in
Chapter 3), then start EDLIN and specify the new filename.

5.3 HOW TO QUIT EDLIN

When you finish the editing session, you can save the
original and the updated (new) files by using the End
command. The End command is discussed in this chapter in
the section 5.7, "EDLIN Commands." The original file is
renamed with an extension of .BAK, and the new file has the
filename and extension you specify when you start EDLIN.
The original .BAK file will not be erased until the end of
the editing session, or until EDLIN needs the disk space.

5.4 SPECIAL EDITING KEYS

The special editing keys and template discussed in Chapter 4 can be used to edit your text files. These keys are discussed in detail in this section.

Table 5.1 summarizes the commands, codes, and functions. Descriptions of the special editing keys follow the table.

<div style="border:1px solid black">

Note

The keys on your keyboard may not correspond to the specific keys in the following examples. Therefore, these MS-DOS editing keys will be referred to by FUNCTION rather than by name. When an example says to press the <SKIP1> key, find the key on your keyboard that corresponds to the "skip one character" editing function and press it. Some functions may require you to press two keys. Consult the operating manual for your computer to determine which keys correspond to the MS-DOS editing functions described here.

</div>

Table 5.1 Special Editing Keys

Function	Key	Description
Copy one character	<COPY1>	Copies one character from the template to the new line.
Copy up to character	<COPYUP>	Copies all characters from the template to the new line, up to the character specified.
Copy template	<COPYALL>	Copies all remaining characters in the template to the screen.
Skip one character	<SKIP1>	Does not copy (skips over) a character.
Skip up to character	<SKIPUP>	Does not copy (skips over) the characters in the template, up to the character specified.
Quit input	<VOID>	Voids the current input; leaves the template unchanged.
Insert mode	<INSERT>	Enters/exits insert mode.
Replace mode	<REPLACE>	Turns insert mode off; this is the default.
New template	<NEWLINE>	Makes the new line the new template.

KEY

        <COPY1>

PURPOSE

        Copies one character from the template to the
        current line.

COMMENTS

        Pressing the <COPY1> key copies one character
        from the template to the current line. When
        you press <COPY1>, EDLIN inserts one character
        in the current line and turns off insert mode.

        Example:

        Assume that the screen shows:

                1:*This is a sample file.
                2:*_

        At the beginning of the editing session, the
        cursor (shown by the underline) is at the
        beginning of the line.   Pressing the <COPY1>
        key copies the first character (T) to the
        second of the two lines displayed:

                        1:*This is a sample file.
                <COPY1> 2:*T_

        Each time you press the <COPY1> key, one more
        character appears:

                <COPY1> 1:*Th_
                <COPY1> 2:*Thi_
                <COPY1> 2:*This_

KEY
        <COPYUP>

PURPOSE
        Copies multiple characters up to a given
        character.

COMMENTS
        Pressing the <COPYUP> key copies all characters
        up to a given character from the template to
        the current line. The given character is the
        next character typed after <COPYUP>; it is not
        copied or displayed on the screen.   Pressing
        the <COPYUP> key moves the cursor to the single
        character that is specified in the command.   If
        the template does not contain the character,
        nothing is copied.   Pressing <COPYUP> also
        automatically turns off insert mode.

        Example:

        Assume that the screen shows:

            1:*This is a sample file.
            2:*_

        At the beginning of the editing session, the
        cursor (shown by the underline) is at the
        beginning of the line. Pressing the <COPYUP>
        key copies all characters up to the character
        specified right after the <COPYUP> key.

                    1:*This is a sample file
            <COPYUP>p 1:*This is a sam_

KEY

      <COPYALL>

PURPOSE

      Copies the template to the current line.

COMMENTS

      Pressing the <COPYALL> key copies all remaining
characters from the template to the current
line. No matter where the cursor is when the
<COPYALL> key is pressed, EDLIN displays the
rest of the line, and the cursor appears at the
end of the line. .

      Example:

      Assume that the screen shows:

          1:*This is a sample file.
          2:*_

      At the beginning of the editing session, the
cursor (shown by the underline) is at the
beginning of the line. Pressing the <COPYALL>
key copies all characters from the template
(shown in the upper line displayed) to the line
with the cursor (the lower line displayed):

             1:*This is a sample file   (template)
  <COPYALL> 2:*This is a sample file._ (current
                                   line)

      Also, insert mode is automatically turned off.

KEY

        <SKIP1>

PURPOSE

        Skips over one character in the template.

COMMENTS

        Pressing the <SKIP1> key skips over one
        character in the template. Each time you press
        the <SKIP1> key, one character is not copied
        from the template. The action of the <SKIP1>
        key is similar to the <COPY1> key, except that
        <SKIP1> skips a character in the template
        rather than copying it to the current line.

        Example:

        Assume that the screen shows:

            1:*This is a sample file.
            2:*_

        At the beginning of the editing session, the
        cursor (shown by the underline) is at the
        beginning of the line. Pressing the <SKIP1>
        key skips over the first character (T).

                    1:*This is a sample file
            <SKIP1> 2:*_

        The cursor does not move and only the template
        is changed. To see how much of the line has
        been skipped over, press the <COPYALL> key,
        which moves the cursor past the last character
        of the line.

                     1:*This is a sample file.
            <SKIP1> 2:*
            <COPYALL> 2:*h̄is is a sample file._

KEY

        <SKIPUP>

PURPOSE

        Skips multiple characters in the template up to
        the specified character.

COMMENTS

        Pressing the <SKIPUP> key skips over all
        characters up to a given character in the
        template. This character is not copied and
        does not appear on the screen. If the template
        does not contain the character, nothing is
        skipped over. The action of the <SKIPUP> key
        is similar to the <COPYUP> key, except that
        <SKIPUP> skips over characters in the template
        rather than copying them to the current line.

        Example:

        Assume that the screen shows:

            1:*This is a sample file.
            2:*_

        At the beginning of the editing session, the
        cursor (shown by the underline) is at the
        beginning of the line. Pressing the <SKIPUP>
        key skips over all the characters in the
        template up to the character pressed after the
        <SKIPUP> key (in this example, "p"):

                        1:*This is a sample file.
            <SKIPUP>p 2:*_

        The cursor does not move. To see how much of
        the line has been skipped over, press the
        <COPYALL> key to copy the template. This moves
        the cursor to the end of the line:

                                1:*This is a sample file.
        <SKIPUP>p<COPYALL> 2:*ple file._

KEY
          <VOID>

PURPOSE
          Quits input and empties the current line.

COMMENTS
          Pressing the <VOID> key empties the current
          line, but it leaves the template unchanged.
          <VOID> also prints a back slash (\), carriage
          return, and line feed, and turns insert mode
          off. The cursor (shown by the underline) is at
          the beginning of the line. Pressing the
          <COPYALL> key copies the template to the
          current line and the current line appears as it
          was before <VOID> was pressed.

          Example:

          Assume that the screen shows:

               1:*This is a sample file.
               2:*_

          At the beginning of the editing session, the
          cursor is at the beginning of the line. Assume
          that line 2 contains the words "Sample File":

               1:*This is a sample file.
               2:*Sample File_

          To cancel line 2 (Sample File), and to keep
          "This is a sample file.", press <VOID>. Notice
          that a backslash appears on the Sample File
          line to tell you it has been canceled.

                      1:*This is a sample file.
               <VOID> 2:*Sample File\

          Press the Return key to keep line 1, or to
          perform any other editing functions. If you
          press <COPYALL>, EDLIN copies the original
          template to the line.

                         1: This is a sample file.
               <VOID>   2: Sample File.\
               <COPYALL> 2: This is a sample file.

KEY

        <INSERT>

PURPOSE

        Enters/exits insert mode.

COMMENTS

        Pressing the <INSERT> key causes EDLIN to enter
        or   exit   insert   mode.   The   cursor   in   the
        template does not   move.   The   cursor   in   the
        current   line   moves   as   each   character   is
        inserted. However, when you   finish   inserting
        characters, the cursor is at the same character
        in the template as it was before the   insertion
        began.   Characters   are   inserted   into   the
        template In front of the cursor.

        Example:

        Assume that the screen shows:

            l:*This is a sample file.
            2:*_

        At the beginning of the   editing   session,   the
        cursor (shown   by   the   underline)   is   at   the
        beginning of the line. Assume that   you   press
        the <COPYUP> and f keys:

                      l:*This is a sample file.
            <COPYUP>f l:*This is a sample _

        Now press   the   <INSERT>   key   and   insert   the
        characters "edit" and a space:

                          l:*This is a sample file.
            <COPYUP>f   2:*This is a sample _
            <INSERT>edit 2:*This is a sample edit _

        If you now press the <COPYALL> key, the rest of
        the template is copied to the line:

                       l:*This is a sample edit
            <COPYALL> 2:*This is a sample edit file._

If, after entering insert mode, you press the
Return key, the remainder of the template is
cut off, and the current line ends after the
inserted text:

        2: This is a sample edit
        3: *

To exit insert mode, simply press the <INSERT>
key again.

KEY

        <REPLACE>

PURPOSE

        Enters replace mode.

COMMENTS

        Pressing the <REPLACE> key causes EDLIN to exit
        insert mode and to enter replace mode. All the
        characters you type overstrike and replace
        characters in the template. When you start to
        edit a line, replace mode is in effect. If you
        press the Return key, EDLIN deletes the
        remainder of the template.

        Example:

        Assume that the screen shows:

                1:*This is a sample file.
                2:*_

        At the beginning of the editing session, the
        cursor (shown by the underline) is at the
        beginning of the line. Assume that you then
        press <COPYUP>m, <INSERT>lary, <REPLACE>tax,
        and then <COPYALL>:

                            1:*This is a sample file.
                <COPYUP>m   2:*This is a sa_
                <INSERT>lary 2:*This is a salary_
                <REPLACE> tax 2:*This is a salary tax_
                <COPYALL>   2:*This is a salary tax file._

        Notice that you inserted "lary" and replaced
        "mple" with " tax". If you type characters
        that extend beyond the length of the template,
        the remaining characters in the template are
        added at the end of the line when you press
        <COPYALL>.

KEY

          <NEWLINE>

PURPOSE

          Creates a new template.

COMMENTS

          Pressing the <NEWLINE> key copies the current
          line to the template. The contents of the
          previous template are deleted. Pressing
          <NEWLINE> displays an @ ("at sign" character),
          and outputs a return and a line feed. When you
          press <NEWLINE>, EDLIN empties the current line
          and turns off insert mode.

Note

<NEWLINE> performs the same function as the <VOID> key,
except that the template is changed and an @ ("at sign"
character) is printed instead of a \ (backslash).

          Example:

          Assume that the screen shows:

                1:*This is a sample file.
                2:*_

          At the beginning of the editing session, the
          cursor (shown by the underline) is at the
          beginning of the line. Assume that you enter
          <COPYUP>m, <INSERT>lary, <REPLACE>tax, and then
          <COPYALL>:

                              1:*This is a sample file.
                <COPYUP>m   2:*This is a sa_
                <INSERT>lary 2:*This is a salary_
                <REPLACE> tax 2:*This is a salary tax_
                <COPYALL>   2:*This is a salary tax file._

At this point, assume that you want this line
to be the new template, so you press the
<NEWLINE> key:

          1: This is a sample file.
          2: This is a salary tax file.@

The @ indicates that this new line is now the
new template.   Additional editing can be done
using the new template.

5.5 COMMAND INFORMATION

EDLIN commands are shown in the following table. They
are also described in this chapter following the
description of command options.

Table 5.2. EDLIN Commands

Command	What it does...
<line>	Edits a line or lines
A	Appends lines
C	Copies lines
D	Deletes lines
E	Ends editing
I	Inserts lines
L	Lists text
M	Moves lines
P	Pages text
Q	Quits editing
R	Replaces lines
S	Searches text
T	Transfers text
W	Writes lines

EDLIN commands perform editing functions on lines of
text. The following list contains information you
should read before you use EDLIN commands.

    1. Pathnames are acceptable in commands.   For
        example, by typing:

            edlin \user\joe\report.may

        you can edit the REPORT.MAY file in the
        subdirectory JOE.

    2. You can reference line numbers relative to the
        current line (the line with the asterisk).
        Use a minus sign with a number to indicate
        lines before the current line. Use a plus
        sign with a number to indicate lines after the
        current line.

Note

A capital "L" has been used here for the "list" command
in order to avoid confusion with the number one.   A
small letter "l" would work just as well.

Example:

        -10,+10L

This command lists 10 lines before the current
line,   the current line, and 10 lines after the
current line.

3.   Multiple commands may be typed on one command
     line. When you type a command to edit a single
     line using a line number (<line>), a semicolon
     must separate commands on the line.   Otherwise,
     one command may follow another without any
     special separators.   In the case of a Search or
     Replace command, the string may be ended by
     pressing Control-Z instead of the Return key.

     Examples:

     The following command line edits line 15 and
     then displays lines 10 through 20 on the
     screen.

            15;-5,+5L

     The command line in the next example searches
     for the words "This house," and then displays
     five lines before and five lines after the line
     that contains "This house." If EDLIN does not
     find any lines that contain the words "This
     house", then the displayed lines are those line
     numbers relative to the current line.   Note
     that the current line (the line with the
     asterisk) must be <u>before</u> the line or lines that
     contain the search string.

            sThis house <Control-Z>-5,+5L

4.   You can type EDLIN commands <u>with</u> or <u>without</u> a
     space between the line number and command. For
     example, to delete line 6, the command 6d is
     the same as 6 d.

5. You can insert a control character (such as
    Control-C) into text by using the quote
    character Control-V before it while in insert
    mode. Control-V tells MS-DOS to recognize the
    next <u>capital</u> letter typed as a control
    character. It is also possible to use a
    control character in any Search or Replace
    command by using the special quote character.
    For example:

            s<Control-V>Z
            will find the first occurrence
            of Control-Z in a file

            r<Control-V>Z<Control-Z>dog
            will replace all occurrences
            of Control-Z in a file by dog

            s<Control-V>C<Control-Z>cat
            will replace all occurrences
            of Control-C by cat

    It is possible to insert Control-V into the
    text by typing Control-V-V.

6. The Control-Z character ordinarily tells EDLIN,
    "This is the end of the file." If you have
    Control-Z characters elsewhere in your file,
    you must tell EDLIN that these other control
    characters do not mean end-of-file. Use the /b
    switch to tell EDLIN to ignore any Control-Z
    characters in the file and to show you the
    entire file. For example, when you start
    EDLIN, type:

            EDLIN <filename> /b

    to ignore all Control-Z characters.

5.6 COMMAND OPTIONS

Many EDLIN commands accept one or more options. The
effect of a command option varies, depending on with
which command it is used. The following list describes
each option.

<line>   <line> indicates a line number that you
                type. Use a comma or a space to separate
                the numbers from other line numbers, other
                options, and from the command.

                <line> may be specified one of three ways:

                <number> Any number less than 65534. If a
                        number larger than the largest
                        existing line number is specified,
                        then <line> means the line after
                        the last line number.

                Period (.) If a period is specified for
                        <line>, then <line> means the
                        current line number. The current
                        line is the last line edited, and
                        is not always the last line
                        displayed. EDLIN marks the
                        current line with an asterisk (*)
                        between the line number and the
                        first character.

                Pound   (#) The pound sign indicates the
                Sign   line after the last line number.
                        If you type # for <line>, this is
                        the same as typing a number larger
                        than the last line number.

                Return If you type a command and then
                key   press Return without any of the
                        line markers listed above, EDLIN
                        uses a default value for each
                        command. (Default values may be
                        different for each command).

?   The question mark option tells EDLIN to
                ask you if the correct string has been
                found. The question mark is used only
                with the Replace and Search commands.
                Before continuing, EDLIN waits for you to
                type a Y or press the Return key for a
                "yes" response, or to press any other key
                for a "no" response.

<string>   <string> represents text to be found, to
                be replaced, or to replace other text.
                The <string> option is used only with the
                Search and Replace commands. Each
                <string> must be ended by a Control-Z or a
                carriage return (see the Replace command
                for details). No spaces should be left
                between strings or between a string and
                its command letter, unless you want those
                spaces to be part of the string.

5.7 EDLIN COMMANDS

The following pages describe EDLIN editing commands.

NAME

Append

PURPOSE

Adds the specified number of lines from disk to the
file being edited in memory. The lines are added at
the end of lines that are currently in memory.

SYNTAX

[<n>]a

COMMENTS

This command is meaningful only if the file being
edited is too large to fit into memory. As many
lines as possible are read into memory for editing
when you start EDLIN.

To edit the remainder of the file that will not fit
into memory, lines that have already been edited
must be written to disk. Then you can load unedited
lines from disk into memory with the Append command.
Refer to the Write command in this chapter for
information on how to write edited lines to disk.

Notes

1. If you do not specify the number of lines to
    append, lines will be appended to memory until
    available memory is 3/4 full. No action will be
    taken if available memory is already 3/4 full.

2. EDLIN displays "End of input file" after the Append
    command reads the last line of the file into memory.

NAME

  Copy

PURPOSE

  Copies a range of lines to a specified line number.
  The lines can be copied as many times as you want by
  using the <count> option.

SYNTAX

  [<line>],[<line>],<line>[,<count>]c

COMMENTS

  If you do not specify a number for the <count>
  option, EDLIN copies the lines one time. If the
  first or second <line> is omitted, the default is
  the   current   line.   The   file   is renumbered
  automatically after the copy.

  The line numbers must not overlap or you will get an
  "Entry error" message. For example, 3,20,15C would
  result in an error message.

  Examples:

  Assume that the following file exists and is ready
  to edit:

        1: This is a sample file
        2: used to show copying lines.
        3: See what happens when you use
        4: the Copy command
        5: (the C command)
        6: to copy text in your file.

  You can copy this entire block of text by issuing
  the following command:

        1,6,7c

  This will copy lines 1 through 6 and duplicate them
  one time, beginning on line 7.

The result is:

```
 1: This is a sample file
 2: used to show copying lines.
 3: See what happens when you use
 4: the Copy command
 5: (the C command)
 6: to copy text in your file.
 7: This is a sample file
 8: used to show copying lines.
 9: See what happens when you use
10: the Copy command
11: (the C command)
12: to copy text in your file.
```

If you want to place the text within other text, the
third <line> option should specify the line before
which you want the copied text to appear. For
example, assume that you want to copy lines and
insert them within the following file:

```
 1: This is a sample file
 2: used to show copying lines.
 3: See what happens when you use
 4: the Copy command
 5: (the C command)
 6: to copy text in your file.
 7: You can also use Copy
 8: to copy lines of text
 9: to the middle of your file.
10: End of sample file.
```

The command 3,6,10C results in the following file:

```
 1: This is a sample file
 2: used to show copying lines.
 3: See what happens when you use
 4: the Copy command
 5: (the C command)
 6: to copy text in your file.
 7: You can also use Copy
 8: to copy lines of text
 9: to the middle of your file.
10: See what happens when you use
11: the Copy command
12: (the C command)
13: to copy text in your file.
14: End of sample file.
```

NAME
        Delete

PURPOSE
        Deletes a specified range of lines in a file.

SYNTAX
        [<line>][,<line>]d

COMMENTS
        If the first <line> is omitted, that option will
        default to the current line (the line with the
        asterisk next to the line number). If the second
        <line> is omitted, then just the first <line> will
        be deleted. When lines have been deleted, the line
        immediately after the deleted section becomes the
        current line and has the same line number as the
        first deleted <line> had before the deletion
        occurred.

        Examples:

        Assume that the following file exists and is ready
        to edit:

                1: This is a sample file
                2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
                3: See what happens when you use
                4: Delete and Insert
                    .
                    .
                    .
                25: (the D and I commands)
                26: to edit the text
                27:*in your file.

    To delete multiple lines, type <line>,<line>d:

                5,24d

    The result is:

                1: This is a sample file
                2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
                3: See what happens when you use
                4: Delete and Insert
                5: (the D and I commands)
                6: to edit text
                7:*in your file.

To delete a single line, type:

    6d

The result is:

        1: This is a sample file
        2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
        3: See what happens when you use
        4: Delete and Insert
        5: (the D and I commands)
        6:*in your file.

Next, delete a range of lines from the following
file:

        1: This is a sample file
        2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
        3:*See what happens when you use
        4: Delete and Insert
        5: (the D and I commands)
        6: to edit text
        7: in your file.

To delete a range of lines beginning with the
current line (in this case, line number 3), type:

        ,6d

The result is:

        1: This is a sample file
        2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
        3:*in your file.

Notice that the lines are automatically renumbered.

NAME
        Edit

PURPOSE
      · Edits a line of text.

SYNTAX
        [<line>]

COMMENTS
        When a line number is typed, EDLIN displays the line
        number and text; then, on the line below, EDLIN
        reprints the line number. The line is now ready for
        editing. You may use any of the EDLIN editing
        commands to edit the line. The existing text of the
        line serves as the template until you press the
        Return key. If you do not type a line number (that
        is, if only the Return key is pressed), the line
        after the current line (marked with an asterisk (*))
        is edited. If no changes to the current line are
        needed and the cursor is at the beginning or end of
        the line, press the Return key to accept the line as
        is.

Warning

If you press the Return key while the cursor is in the
middle of the line, EDLIN deletes the remainder of the
line.

        Example:

        Assume that the following file exists and is ready
        to edit:

                1: This is a sample file
                2: used to show
                3: the editing of line
                4:*four.

        To edit line 4, type:

            4

The contents of the line are displayed with a cursor below the line:

        4:* four.
        4:*_

Now, using the <COPYALL> special editing key, type:

        <INSERT>number   4: number_
        <COPYALL><RETURN>   4: number‾four.

NAME
        End

PURPOSE
        Ends the editing session.

SYNTAX
        e

COMMENTS
        This command saves the edited file on disk, renames
        the original input file <filename>.BAK, and then
        exits EDLIN. If the file was created during the
        editing session, no .BAK file is created.

        The E command takes no options. Therefore, you
        cannot tell EDLIN on which drive to save the file.
        The drive you want to save the file on must be
        selected when the editing session is started. Type
        the drive letter in front of the filename you
        specify when you start EDLIN. If the drive is not
        selected when EDLIN is started, the file will be
        saved on the disk in the default drive. You can
        still copy the file to a different drive using the
        MS-DOS Copy command.

        Make sure that the disk contains enough free space
        for the entire file. If the disk does not contain
        enough free space, the write will be aborted and the
        edited file lost, although part of the file might be
        written out to the disk.

        Example:

            e<RETURN>

        After EDLIN processes the E command, the screen
        displays the MS-DOS prompt (for example, A>).

NAME

Insert

PURPOSE

Inserts   text   immediately   before   the   specified
<line>.

SYNTAX

[<line>]i

COMMENTS

If you are creating a new file, the I command must
be typed before text can be inserted. Text begins
with line number 1. Successive line numbers appear
automatically each time you press the Return key.

EDLIN remains in insert mode until Control-C is
typed. When the insert is completed and insert mode
has been exited, the line immediately following the
inserted lines becomes the current line. All line
numbers   following   the   inserted   section   are
incremented by the number of lines inserted.

If <line> is not specified, the default is the
current line number and the lines are inserted
before the current line. If <line> is a number
larger than the last line number, or if a pound sign
(#) is specified as <line>, the inserted lines are
appended to the end of the file. In this case, the
last line inserted becomes the current line.

Examples:

Assume that the following file exists and is ready
to edit:

    1: This is a sample file
    2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
    3: See what happens when you use
    4: Delete and Insert
    5: (the D and I commands)
    6: to edit text
    7:*in your file.

To insert text before a specific line , type:

    7i

The result is:

    7:*_

Now, type the new text for line 7:

    7: and renumber lines

Then, to end the insertion, press Control-C on the
next line:

    8: <Control-C>

Now type L to list the file. The result is:

    1: This is a sample file
    2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
    3: See what happens when you use
    4: Delete and Insert
    5: (the D and I commands)
    6: to edit text
    7. and renumber lines
    8:*in your file.

To insert lines immediately before the current line,
type:

    i

The result is:

    8:*_

Now, insert the following text and terminate with a
Control-C on the next line:

    8: so they are consecutive
    9: <Control-C>

Now to list the file and see the result, type:

    L

The result is:

```
     1: This is a sample file
     2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
     3: See what happens when you use
     4: Delete and Insert
     5: (the D and I commands)
     6: to edit text
     7: and renumber lines
     8: so they are consecutive
     9:*in your file.
```

To append new lines to the end of the file, type:

```
     10i
```

This produces the following:

```
     10:*_
```

Now, type the following new lines:

```
     10: The Insert command can place new lines
     11: in the file; there's no problem
     12: because the line numbers are dynamic;
     13: they'll go all the way to 65533.
```

End the insertion by pressing Control-C on line 14.
The new lines will appear at the end of all previous
lines in the file. Now list all the lines:

```
     1, 13L
```

The result is:

```
     1: This is a sample file
     2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
     3: See what happens when you use
     4: Delete and Insert
     5: (the D and I commands)
     6: to edit text
     7: and renumber lines
     8: so they are consecutive
     9: in your file.
     10: The insert command can place new lines
     11: in the file; there's no problem
     12: because the line numbers are dynamic;
     13: they'll go all the way to 65533.
```

NAME

        List

PURPOSE

        Lists a range of lines, including the two lines
        specified.

SYNTAX

        [<line>][,<line>]L

COMMENTS

        A capital letter "L" has been used here to avoid
        confusion with the number one. A small letter "l"
        would work just as well.

        Default values are provided if you do not type
        either option. If you do not type the first option,
        as in:

            ,<line>L

        the display will start 11 lines before the current
        line   and end with the specified <line>.   The
        beginning comma is required to indicate the omitted
        first option.

Note

If the specified <line> is more than 11 lines before
the current line, the display will be the same as if
you omitted both options.

        If you omit the second option, as in:

            <line>L

        23 lines   will be displayed, starting with the
        specified <line>. If you just type:

            L

        23 lines will be displayed--the 11 lines before the
        current line, the current line, and the 11 lines
        after the current line. If there are less than 11
        lines before the current line, more than 11 lines
        after the current line will be displayed to make a
        total of 23 lines.

Examples:

Assume that the following file exists and is ready
to edit:

        1: This is a sample file
        2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
        3: See what happens when you use
        4: Delete and Insert
        5: (the D and I commands)
          .
          .
          .
        15:*The current line contains an asterisk.
          .
          .
          .
        26: to edit text
        27: in your file.

To list a range of lines without reference to the
current line, type <line>,<line>L:

        2,5L

The result is:

        2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
        3: See what happens when you use
        4: Delete and Insert
        5: (the D and I commands)

To list a range of lines beginning with the current
line, type <line>, L (where <line> is the current
line):

        15, L

The result is:

        15:*The current line contains an asterisk.
          .
          .
          .
        26: to edit text
        27: in your file.

To list a range of 23 lines centered around the
current line, type only L:

        L

The result is:

4: Delete and Insert
5: (the D and I commands)
    .
    .
    .
13: The current line is listed in the middle.
14: The current line remains unchanged.
15:*The current line contains an asterisk.
    .
    .
    .
26: to edit text
27: in your file.

NAME
        Move

PURPOSE
        Moves a range of text to the line specified.

SYNTAX
        [<line>],<line>,<line>m

COMMENTS
        Use the Move command to move a block of text to
        another   location   in the file: The lines are
        renumbered according to the direction of the move.
        For example:

                ,+25,100m

        moves the text from the current line plus 25 lines
        to line 100.   If the line numbers overlap, EDLIN
        displays an "Entry error" message.

        To move lines 20-30 to line 100, type:

                20,30,100m

NAME
        Page

PURPOSE
        Pages through a file 23 lines at a time.

SYNTAX
        [<line>][,<line>]p

COMMENTS
        If you do not type the first <line>, that number
        will default to the current line plus one. If you
        do not type the second <line> option, 23 lines will
        be listed.   The new current line becomes the last
        line displayed and is marked with an asterisk.

NAME

> Quit

PURPOSE

> Quits the editing session, does <u>not</u> save any editing
> changes, and exits to the MS-DOS operating system.

SYNTAX

> q

COMMENTS

> EDLIN prompts you to make sure you don't want to
> save the changes.
>
> Type Y if you want to quit the editing session.
> EDLIN does not save any editing changes and does not
> create a backup (.BAK) file. Refer to the End
> command in this chapter for information about the
> .BAK file.
>
> Type N if you want to continue the editing session.

Note

When started, EDLIN erases any previous copy of the
file with an extension of .BAK to make room to save
the new copy. If you reply Y to the "Abort edit (Y/N)?"
message, EDLIN deletes your previous backup copy.

> Example: q
>   Abort edit (Y/N)?y<Return>
>   A>_

NAME
        Replace

PURPOSE
        Replaces all occurrences of a string of text in
        a range with a different string of text (or
        blanks).

SYNTAX
        [<line>][,<line>][?]r<string1><Control-Z>
           <string2>

COMMENTS
        Each time EDLIN finds <string1>, it replaces
        the text with <string2>. EDLIN displays each
        line that changes. If a line contains two or
        more replacements, then the line is displayed
        once for each change. When all changes are
        made, the Replace command ends and the asterisk
        prompt reappears.

        If you want to replace one string of text with
        another string, the two strings must be
        separated by a Control-Z. The second string
        can be ended by pressing the Return key.

        If you do not specify string1, the Replace
        command assumes the "old" (any previous) value.
        If this is the first Replace done during the
        session, and you do not specify string1, the
        command ends. If you do not specify string2,
        end string1 with a carriage return.

        If you omit the first line option, EDLIN will
        select a default line that is one line after
        the current line. The default for the second
        line argument is #. Remember that # means the
        line after the last line of the file.

        If you end string1 with a Control-Z and do not
        specify string2, EDLIN assumes you want blank
        spaces for string2. For example:

            r dogs<Control-Z><RETURN>

        deletes all occurrences of "dogs", but

            r dogs<RETURN>
            r<RETURN>

        replaces "dogs" with the previous string2, and
        the previous string1 becomes the previous

string2. Note that "previous" here refers to
an earlier string specified either in a Search
or a Replace command.

If you specify a question mark (?) in the
Replace command, the Replace stops at each line
with a string that matches string1, displays
the line with string2, and then displays the
prompt "O.K.?". If you press Y or Return,
string2   replaces   string1,   and   the   next
occurrence of string1 is displayed.   EDLIN
displays   the   "O.K.?" prompt again.   This
process continues until the end of the range or
until the end of the file. After the last
string1 is found, EDLIN displays the asterisk
prompt.

If you press any key besides Y or the Return
key after the "O.K.?" prompt, the string1 will
be left as it was, and Replace will go to the
next occurrence of string1. If string1 occurs
more than once in a line, each occurrence of
string1   is replaced individually, and the
"O.K.?" prompt   is   displayed   after   each
replacement.   In this way, only the desired
string1 is replaced, and you can   prevent
unwanted substitutions.

Examples:

Assume that the following file exists and is
ready for editing:

     1: This is a sample file
     2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
     3: See what happens when you use
     4: Delete and Insert
     5: (the D and I commands)
     6: to edit text
     7: in your file.
     8: The insert command can place new lines
     9: in the file; there's no problem
    10: because the line numbers are dynamic;
    11: they'll go all the way to 65533.

To replace all occurrences of "and" with "or" in lines 2 through 10, type:

        2,12 rand<Control-Z>or

and press the Return key. The result is:

        4: Delete or Insert
        5: (the D or I commands)
        5: (the D or I commors)
        8: The insert commor can place new lines

(Notice that line 5 has two replacements and is shown twice).

In the above example, some unwanted changes occurred. To avoid these and to confirm each replacement, the same file can be used with a slightly different command.

In the next example, to replace only certain occurrences of "and" with "or", type:

        1, 15? rand<Control-Z>or

and press the Return key. The result is:

        4: Delete or Insert
        O.K.? Y
        5: (The D or I commands)
        O.K.? Y
        5: (The D or I commors)
        O.K.? N
        8: The insert commor can place new lines
        O.K.? N
        *

Now, type the List command (L) to see the result of all these changes:

                .
                .
        4: Delete or Insert
        5: (The D or I commands)
                .
        8: The Insert command can place new lines
                .
                .

NAME

       Search

PURPOSE

       Searches a range of lines for a string of text.

SYNTAX

       [<line>][,<line>][?]s<string><RETURN>

COMMENTS
            The string must end with a return.   EDLIN
            displays the first line that matches the string
            and that line becomes the current line. Unless
            you type the question mark (?) option, the
            Search command ends when it finds the first
            match.   If EDLIN cannot find a line with a
            match, the message "Not found" is displayed.

            If you include the question mark option (?),
            EDLIN displays the first line with a matching
            string; it will then prompt you with the
            message O.K.?.   If you press either the Y or
            the Return key, the line becomes the current
            line and the search ends. If you press any
            other key, the search continues until another
            match is found, or until all lines have been
            searched. (The search ends when EDLIN displays
            the "Not found" message.)

            If you do not type the first line number, EDLIN
            selects the line <u>after</u> the current line. If
            you do not type the second line number, the
            second line defaults to # (the line after the
            last line of the file). If you omit a search
            string, EDLIN uses the text from any previous
            Search or Replace command. If this is the
            first Search or Replace command you've used
            this session, and you do not specify a search
            string, the Search command ends immediately.

Examples:

Assume that the following file exists and is
ready for editing:

         1: This is a sample file
         2: used to show dynamic line numbers.
         3: See what happens when you use
         4: Delete and Insert
         5: (the D and I commands)
         6: to edit text
         7: in your file.
         8: The insert command can place new lines
         9: in the file; there's no problem
        10: because the line numbers are dynamic;
        11:*they'll go all the way to 65533.

To search for the first occurrence of "and",
type

        2,12 sand

and press the Return key. EDLIN displays the
following lines:

        4: Delete and Insert

To get the "and" in line 5, modify the search
command by typing:

        <SKIP1><COPYALL>,12 sand

and press the Return key. The search continues
from the line after the current line (line 4),
since no first line was given. The result is:

        5: (the D and I commands)

To search through several occurrences of a
string until the correct string is found, type:

        1, ? sand

The result is:

        4: Delete and Insert
        O.K.?_

If you press any key (except Y or the Return
key), the search continues, so type N here:

        O.K.? n

Continue:

          5: (the D and I commands)
          O.K.?_

Now press Y to terminate the search:

          O.K.? Y
          *_

To search   for   string   XYZ   without   the
verification (O.K.?), type:

          Sxyz

and press the Return key.

EDLIN reports a match and continues to search
for   the same string when you retype the Search
command and press Return:

          s<RETURN>

EDLIN reports another match, if there is one.

          s<RETURN>

EDLIN displays "Not found" at the end of the search.

Note that the text string defaults to any
string specified by a previous Replace or
Search command.

NAME

        Transfer

PURPOSE

        Inserts (merges) the contents of a file into
        the file currently being edited at a specific
        line number. If the line number is omitted,
        then the current line is used.

SYNTAX

        [<line>]t<pathname>

COMMENTS

        This command is useful if you want to put the
        contents of one file into another file, or into
        the text you are typing. The transferred text
        is inserted at the line number specified by the
        <line> option and the lines are renumbered.

NAME

        Write

PURPOSE

        Writes a specific number of lines to disk from
        the lines that are being edited in memory.
        Lines are written to disk beginning with line
        number 1.

SYNTAX

        [<n>]w

COMMENTS

        This command is meaningful only if the file you
        are editing is too large to fit into memory.
        When you start EDLIN, EDLIN reads lines into
        memory until memory is 3/4 full.

        To edit the remainder of your file, you must
        write edited lines in memory to disk. Then you
        can load additional unedited lines from disk
        into memory by using the Append command.

Note

If you do not specify the number of lines, lines will
be written until memory is 3/4 full. EDLIN will not
write any lines to disk if memory is already more than
3/4 full. All lines are renumbered, so that the first
remaining line becomes line number 1.

5.8   ERROR MESSAGES

EDLIN displays the following error messages:

Cannot edit .BAK file--rename file

> Cause: You attempted to edit a file with a filename
> extension of .BAK. .BAK files cannot be edited because
> EDLIN reserves this extension for backup copies.

> Cure: If you need to edit a file with an extension of
> .BAK, you must either rename the file with a different
> extension, or copy the .BAK file and give it a
> different filename extension. Refer to Chapter 3 for
> information on the Rename and Copy 'commands, if you
> wish to do this.

Disk Full--file write not completed

> Cause: You gave the End command, but the disk did not
> contain enough free space for the whole file. EDLIN
> aborted the End command and returned you to the
> operating system.   Some of the file may have been
> written to the disk.

> Cure: Only a portion (if any) of the file has been
> saved. You should probably delete that portion of the
> file and restart the editing session.   The file will
> not be available after this error. Always be sure that
> the disk has sufficient free space for the file to be
> written to disk before you begin your editing session.

Entry Error

> Cause: The last command you typed contained an error.

> Cure: Retype the command with the correct format and
> press the Return key.

File creation error

> Cause: The EDLIN temporary file cannot be created.

> Cure: Check to make sure that the directory has
> enough space to create the temporary file. Also, make
> sure that the file does not have the same name as a
> subdirectory in the directory where the file to be
> edited is located.

Filename must be specified

> Cause: You did not type a filename when you started
> EDLIN.

> Cure: Type EDLIN and then a filename.

File not found

> Cause: EDLIN could not file the filename you typed
> with a Transfer command.

> Cure: Type a valid filename when issuing .a Transfer
> command.

Incorrect DOS version

> Cause: You attempted to run EDLIN under a version of
> MS-DOS that was not 2.0 or higher.

> Cure: You must make sure that the version of MS-DOS
> that you are using is 2.0 or higher.

Insufficient memory

> Cause: There is not enough memory to run EDLIN.

> Cure: You must free some memory by writing files to
> disk or by deleting files before restarting EDLIN.
> Type a Write command and then an Append command to free
> memory.

Invalid drive name or file

> Cause: You did not type a valid drive or filename when
> you started EDLIN.

> Cure: Type a correct drive or filename.

Invalid Parameter

> Cause: You specified a switch other than /b when
> starting EDLIN.

> Cure: Specify the /b switch when you start EDLIN.

Line too long

>   Cause: During a Replace command, the string given as
>   the replacement caused the line to expand beyond the
>   limit of 253 characters.   EDLIN ended the Replace
>   command.

>   Cure: Divide the long line into two lines, then try
>   the Replace command again.

Must specify destination number

>   Cause: A destination line number was not specified for
>   a Copy or Move command.

>   Cure: Retype the command with a destination line
>   number.

No room in directory for file

>   Cause: When you tried to create a new file, either the
>   directory was full or you specified an illegal disk
>   drive or an illegal filename.

>   Cure: Check the command line that started EDLIN for
>   an illegal filename or illegal disk drive entry. If
>   the command is no longer on the screen and if you have
>   not yet typed a new command, you can restart EDLIN by
>   pressing the <COPYALL> key.

>   If your command contains no illegal entries, run the
>   Chkdsk program for the specified disk drive. If the
>   status report shows that the disk directory is full,
>   remove the disk. Insert and format a new disk.

Not enough room to merge the entire file

>   Cause: There was not enough room in memory to hold the
>   file during a Transfer command.

>   Cure: You must free some memory by writing some files
>   to disk or by deleting some files before you can
>   transfer this file.

Chapter 6
File Comparison Utility (FC)

CHAPTER 6

FILE COMPARISON UTILITY (FC)

6.1   INTRODUCTION

It is sometimes useful to compare files on your disk.   If
you   have   copied a file and later want to compare copies to
see which one is   current,   you   can   use   the   MS-DOS   File
Comparison Utility (FC).

The File Comparison utility compares   the   contents   of   two
files,   or   two   sets of files.   The differences between the
two files can be sent to the screen or to a third file.   The
files   being   compared must be text files unless you specify
the /b switch.

The comparisons are made in one of two ways:

   1.   on a line-by-line

   2.   or a byte-by-byte basis.

The line-by-line comparison isolates blocks   of   lines   that
are   different   between two files and prints those blocks of
lines.   You   use   this   type   of   comparison   to   check   for
differences   in   text   files.   The   byte-by-byte   comparison
displays the bytes that are   different   between   two   files.
You   use this type of comparison to check for differences in
binary files.

6.2   LIMITATIONS ON COMPARISONS

FC uses a large amount of memory (enough to hold 100   lines)
as   buffer storage space to hold the text files.   If the text
files are larger than available memory, FC will compare what
can   be   loaded into the buffer space.   If no match is found
in the portions of the files in the buffer space,   FC   stops
and displays the message:

      resynch failed.   Files are too different.

For binary files larger than available memory, FC compares
both files completely, overlaying the portion in memory with
the next portion from disk. All differences are output in
the same manner as those files that fit completely in
memory.

6.3 HOW TO USE FC

The syntax of FC is as follows:

        fc [/a] [/b] [/c] [/L] [/Lb <n>] [/n] [/t] [/w]
        [/<NNNN>] <filename1> <filename2>

The <filename1> options specifies the first file or set of
files that you want to compare, while the <filename2> option
specifies the second file or set of files that you want to
compare.   FC matches the first file against the second and
reports any differences between them.   For example, to
compare two text files called MONTHLY.REP and SALES.REP you
would type:

        fc /a monthly.rep sales.rep

If you want to specify a set of files, you use a wildcard as
part of the filename. For example, if Joe and Sue both have
files called FILE1.TXT, FILE2.TXT, and FILE3.TXT, they might
use FC to see if their files are identical. They would use
the command:

        fc b:\user\joe\file?.txt \user\sue\file?.txt

FC would take FILE1.TXT in the \USER\JOE directory of disk
drive B and compares it with the corresponding FILE1.TXT in
the \USER\SUE directory.   Then FC would compare Joe's
FILE2.TXT against Sue's FILE2.TXT, and then compare their
FILE3.TXT files.

Since no drive was specified for the second set of files, FC
would assume that the \USER\SUE directory was on the disk in
the default drive.

6.4 FC SWITCHES

There are nine switches that you can use with the File Comparison Utility:

/a   Abbreviates the output of an ASCII comparison. Instead of displaying all of the lines that are different, only the lines that begin and end each set of differences are displayed. The intermediate lines are represented by ellipses (...).

/b   Forces a binary comparison of both files. The two files are compared byte-by-byte, with no attempt to re-synchronize after a mismatch. The mismatches are printed as follows:

        xxxxxxxx   yy   zz

(where xxxxxxxx is the relative address of the pair of bytes from the beginning of the file). Addresses start at 00000000; yy and zz are the mismatched bytes from file1 and file2, respectively. If one of the files contains less data than the other, then a message is printed out. For example, if FILE1.TXT ends before FILE2.TXT, then FC displays:

       fc: file2.txt longer than file1.txt

This switch is the default when you compare .EXE, .COM, .SYS, .OBJ, .LIB, OR .BIN files.

/c   Causes the matching process to ignore the case of letters. All letters in the files are considered uppercase letters. For example,

       Much MORE data IS NOT FOUND

matches:

       much more data is not found

If both the /w and /c options are specified, then FC will compress whites and ignore case. For example, if an underscore represents a white:

       ___DATA_was_found____

matches:

       data_was_found

/L   Compares the files in ASCII mode. This switch is the default when you compare files that do not have extensions of ".EXE," ".COM," ".SYS," ".OBJ," ".LIB," OR ".BIN."

/Lb   Sets the internal line buffer to <n> lines. The
          default length of the internal buffer is 100 lines.
          Files that have more than this number of consecutive,
          differing lines will abort the comparison.

/n   Displays the line numbers on an ASCII comparison.

/t   Does not expand tabs to spaces. The default is to
          treat tabs as spaces to 8-column positions.

/w   Causes FC to compress whites (tabs and spaces) during
          the comparison. Thus, multiple contiguous whites in
          any line will be considered as a single white space.
          Note that although FC compresses whites, it does not
          ignore them. The two exceptions are beginning and
          ending whites in a line, which are ignored. For
          example (note that an underscore represents a white):

               ___More__data_to_be_found____

          matches:

               More_data_to_be_found

          and:

               _____More_____data_to_be_____found_____

          but not:

               ____Moredata_to_be_found

/<NNNN> This switch specifies the number of lines required
          to match for the files to be considered as matching
          again after a difference has been found.   If this
          switch is not specified, it defaults to 2.

6.5 HOW FC REPORTS DIFFERENCES

FC reports the differences between the two files you specify
by displaying the first filename, followed by the lines that
differ between the files, followed by the first line to
match in both files. FC then displays the name of the
second file followed by the lines that are different,
followed by the first line that matches. The default for
the number of lines to match between the files is 2.   (If
you want to change this default, specify the number of lines
with the /<NNNN> switch.)

Example:

```
            ...
            ...

***** (filename1)
<1st matching line in file1 and file2>
<difference>
<next matching line in file1 and file2>
***** (filename2)
<1st matching line in file1 and file2>
<difference>
<next matching line in file1 and file2>


            ...
            ...
```

FC will continue to list each difference.

If the number of lines in the internal buffer is less than the number of consecutive, differing lines, the program will stop. FC displays:

    resynch failed. Files are too different.

and returns to the MS-DOS default drive prompt (for example, A>).

6.6 REDIRECTING FC OUTPUT TO A FILE

The differences and matches between the two files you specify will be displayed on your screen unless you redirect the output to a file. This is accomplished in the same way as MS-DOS command redirection (refer to Chapter 2, "Learning About Commands").

To compare FILE1.TXT and FILE2.TXT and then send the FC output to DIFFER.TXT, type:

    fc file1.txt file2.txt > differ.txt

The differences and matches between FILE1.TXT and FILE2.TXT will be put into DIFFER.TXT on the default drive.

6.7 EXAMPLES

Example 1:

Assume these two text files are on disk:

ALPHA.DOC	BETA.DOC
A	A
B	B
C	C
D	G
E	H
F	I
G	J
H	1
I	2
M	P
N	Q
O	R
P	S
Q	T
R	U
S	V
T	4
U	5
V	W
W	X
X	Y
Y	Z
Z	

To compare the two files and display the differences on the
screen, type:

        fc alpha.doc beta.doc

FC compares ALPHA.DOC with BETA.DOC and displays   the
differences on the screen.   All other defaults remain
intact. (The defaults are: perform an ASCII comparison
with an internal buffer length of 100 lines, treat tabs as
spaces to 8-column positions, do not ignore case, do not
display line numbers, and do not compress whites.)

The output will appear as follows on the screen (the notes
do not appear):

```
      ***** alpha.doc
      C
      D                         NOTE: ALPHA file
      E                         contains CDEFG,
      F                         BETA contains CG.
      G
      ***** beta.doc
      C
      G
      *****

      ***** alpha.doc
      I
      M                         NOTE: ALPHA file
      N                         contains IMNO where
      O                         BETA contains IJ12.
      P
      ***** beta.doc
      I
      J
      1
      2
      P
      *****

      ***** alpha.doc
      V                         NOTE: ALPHA file
      W .                       contains VW where
      ***** beta.doc            BETA contains V45W.
      V
      4
      5
      W
      *****
```

Example 2:

You can print the differences on the line printer using the
same two files. In this example, four successive lines must
be the same to constitute a match.

Type:

      fc /4 alpha.doc beta.doc > prn

The following output would appear on the lineprinter:

```
      ***** alpha.doc
      C
      D
      E
      F
      G
      H
      I
      M
      N            NOTE: P is the 1st of
      O            a string of 4 matches.
      P
      ***** beta.doc
      C
      G
      H
      I
      J
      1
      2
      P
      *****

      ***** alpha.doc
      V
      W                      NOTE: W is the 1st of a
      ***** beta.doc         string of 4 matches.
      V
      4
      5
      W
      *****
```

Example <u>3</u>:

This example forces a binary comparison and then displays
the differences on the screen using the same two files as
were used in the previous examples.

Type:

        fc /b alpha.doc beta.doc

The /b switch in this example forces binary comparison.
This switch and any others must be typed before the
filenames in the FC command line. The following display
would appear:

```
        00000009   44   47
        0000000C   45   48
        0000000F   46   49
        00000012   47   4A
        00000015   48   31
        00000018   49   32
        0000001B   4D   50
        0000001E   4E   51
        00000021   4F   52
        00000024   50   53
        00000027   51   54
        0000002A   52   55
        0000002D   53   56
        00000030   54   34
        00000033   55   35
        00000036   56   57
        00000039   57   58
        0000003C   58   59
        0000003F   59   5A
        00000042   5A   1A
        fc: alpha.doc longer than beta.doc
```

6.8 ERROR MESSAGES

When FC detects an error, one or more of the following error
messages will be displayed:

    fc: cannot open (filename) - No such file or directory
         One of the files you specified does not exist.
         Check the directory for the correct filename.

    fc: (filename) longer than (filename)
         After reaching the end of one of the files in a file
         comparison, the other file still has uncompared data
         left.

    fc: incompatible switches
         You have specified switches that are not compatible.
         (For example, /b and /L.) You should not combine
         binary and ASCII comparison switches.

    fc: out of memory
         You do not have enough memory to perform the
         comparison.

    fc: no differences encountered
         The files are the same.

    usage: fc [/a] [/b] [/c] [/l] [/lb n] [/w] [t] [/n]
            [/NNNN] file1 file2
            One of the switches that you have specified is
            invalid.

    resynch failed. Files are too different.
            FC displays this message if the number of lines in
            the internal line buffer is less than the number of
            consecutive, differing lines. You should specify
            the /Lb switch with a larger number if you want to
            display all of the file differences.

Chapter 7
LINK: A Linker

LINK: A LINKER

7.1 INTRODUCTION

The Microsoft 8086 Object Linker (LINK) creates executable
programs from object files generated by the Microsoft Macro
Assembler (MASM) or by high-level-language compilers, such
as C or Pascal. The linker copies the resulting program to
an executable (.EXE) output file. You can then run the
program by typing the file's name on the MS-DOS command
line.

To use LINK, you must create one or more object files, then
submit these files, along with any required library files,
to the linker for processing. LINK combines code and data
in the object files and searches the named libraries to
resolve external references to routines and variables. It
then copies a relocatable execution image and relocation
information to the executable file. Using the relocation
information, MS-DOS can load the executable image at any
convenient memory location and execute it. LINK can process
programs that contain up to one megabyte of code and data.

Section 7.2 explains how to use the linker to create
executable programs. Section 7.3 defines each of the
options you can use in a LINK command line to control the
linking process. Section 7.4 explains how LINK creates
programs.

7.2 STARTING AND USING LINK

This section explains how to start and use the linker to
create executable programs. You can use LINK in three
different ways: by answering a series of prompts, by
supplying an MS-DOS command line, or by using a response
file. The three methods can also be mixed.

Once you start LINK, it will either process the files you
supplied or prompt you for additional files. You can stop
the linker at any time by pressing the Control-C keys.

7.2.1 Using Prompts to Specify LINK Files

When you type the command name LINK at the MS-DOS prompt,
the linker prompts you for the information it needs. Follow
these steps:

1. Type:
        LINK
    and press the Return key. LINK prompts you for the
    object files you wish to link by displaying the
    following message:

    Object Modules [.OBJ]:

2. Type the name or names of the object files you wish
    to link. If you do not supply file-name
    extensions, LINK supplies .OBJ by default. If you
    have more than one name, make sure you separate
    them with spaces or plus signs (+). If you have
    more names than can fit on one line, type a plus
    sign (+) as the last character on the line and
    press the Return key. LINK prompts for additional
    object files.

    Once you have given all object-file names, press
    the Return key. The linker displays the following
    prompt:

        Run File [filename.EXE]:

3. Note that filename is the same as the first
    filename entered at the Object Modules prompt.
    Type the name of the executable file you wish to
    create, and press the Return key. If you do not
    give an extension, LINK supplies .EXE by default.
    If you want LINK to supply a default
    executable-file name, just press the Return key.
    The filename will be the same as the first object
    file, but the file will have the extension .EXE.

    Once you have pressed the Return key, LINK displays
    the prompt:

        List File [NUL.MAP]:

4. Type the name of the map file you wish to create,
    then press the Return key. If you do not supply a
    filename extension, the linker uses .MAP by
    default. If you do not want a map file, do not
    type a filename. Just press the Return key.

    Once you have pressed the Return key, LINK displays
    the prompt:

        Libraries [.LIB]:

5. Type the names of any library files containing
    routines or variables referenced but not defined in
    your program. If you give more than one name, make
    sure the names are separated by spaces or plus
    signs (+). If you do not supply filename
    extensions, the linker uses .LIB by default. If
    you have more names than can fit on one line, type
    a plus sign (+) as the last character on the line
    and press the Return key. LINK prompts for
    additional filenames.

    After entering all names, press the Return key. If
    you do not want to search any libraries, do not
    enter any names. Just press the Return key.

LINK now creates the executable file.

When entering file names, you must give a pathname for any
file that is not on the current drive and directory. You
can use LINK options by typing them after the filename at
any prompt. If the linker cannot find an object file, it
displays a message and waits so that you can change disks if
necessary.

At any prompt, you can type the rest of the filenames in the
command line format described in Section 7.2.2. For
example, you can choose the default responses for all
remaining prompts by typing a semicolon (;) after any
prompt, or you can type commas (,) to indicate several
files. (If you type a semicolon at the Object Modules
prompt, be sure to supply at least one object-file name.)
When the linker encounters a semicolon, it immediately
chooses the default responses and processes the remaining
files without displaying any more prompts.

7.2.1.1 **Example** —

LINK

```
Object Modules [.OBJ]: moda+modb+
Object Modules [.OBJ]: modc+startup/PAUSE
Run File [moda.EXE]:
List File [NUL.MAP]: abc
Libraries [.LIB]: b:\lib\math
```

This example links the object modules moda.obj, modb.obj,
modc.obj, and startup.obj. It searches the library file
math.lib on Drive B of the lib directory for routines and
data used in the program. It then creates an executable
file named moda.exe, and a map file named abc.map. The
/PAUSE option in the Object Modules prompt line causes LINK
to pause while you change disks. The linker then creates
the executable file (see Section 7.3.2).

7.2.2 Using a Command Line to Specify LINK Files

You can create an executable program by typing LINK followed
by the names of the files you wish to process. The command
line has the following general form:

LINK <objectfiles> [,[<executablefile>] [,[<mapfile>]
[,[<libraryfile>]]]] [<options>] [;]

The <objectfiles> include the name or names of object files
that you want to link together. The files must have been
created using MASM or a high-level-language compiler. The
linker requires at least one object file. If you do not
supply an extension, LINK provides the extension .OBJ.

The optional <executablefile> is a placeholder for the name
you wish to give the executable file LINK will create. If
you do not supply an <executablefile>, LINK creates a
filename by using the filename of the first object file in
the command line and appending it with the extension .EXE.

The optional <mapfile> is the name of the file to receive
the map listing. If you do not supply an extension, the
linker provides the extension .MAP. If you specify the /MAP
or /LINENUMBERS option, the linker creates a map file even
if you do not specify a map file in the command line.

The optional <libraryfiles> include the name or names of the
libraries containing routines that you wish to link to
create a program. If you do not supply an extension, LINK
supplies the extension .LIB.

The <options> control the operation of LINK. You can use
any of the options listed in Section 7.3. You can put
options anywhere on the command line.

The commas (,) separating filenames for the different types
of files are required even if you don't supply a filename.
If you want the filename for a file to be the default (the
same as the base name of the first object file), you can
type the comma that would follow the filename without
actually supplying a filename. You can use a semicolon (;)
anywhere after the object file to terminate the command
line. If you type the comma after the object file, LINK

supplies the default name for the <executablefile> and
suppresses the <mapfile> and the <libraryfiles>.

If you do not supply all filenames in the command line and
do not end the command line with a semicolon, the linker
prompts for additional files, using the prompts described in
Section 7.2.1. If you give more than one object file or
library file, you must separate the names with spaces or
with plus signs (+).

If you do not specify a drive or directory for a file, LINK
assumes the file is on the current drive and directory. You
cannot specify the drive or directory for the <objectfile>
and expect LINK to supply the same drive and directory for
other files. You must give the location of each file,
specifically.

```
                              Note

      When linking modules that were produced by a high-
      level-language compiler that supports overlays, you
      must specify overlay modules by putting them in
      parentheses. Since MASM has no overlay manager, you
      can only specify overlays for object files linked with
      the run-time library of a language compiler that
      supports overlays. For example, you can use overlays
      with modules compiled with Microsoft FORTRAN, Version
      3.2 and later, Microsoft Pascal, Version 3.2 and later,
      and Microsoft C, Version 3.0 and later. See your
      language compiler manual for details on specifying
      overlays.
```

7.2.2.1 Examples –

        LINK file.obj,file.exe,file.map,routine.lib

The first example is equivalent to the following line:

        LINK file,,,routine

It uses the object file file.obj to create the executable
file file.exe. LINK searches the library file.lib for
routines and variables used within the program. It also
creates a file called file.map, which contains a list of the
program's segments and groups.

        LINK startup+file,b:file,\map\file;

The second example uses the two object files, startup.obj
and file.obj, on the current drive to create an executable
file named file.exe on Drive B. LINK creates a map file on
the map directory of the current drive, but does not search
any libraries.

    LINK moda modb modc startup/PAUSE,,abc,b:\lib\math

The final example links the object modules moda.obj,
modb.obj, modc.obj, and startup.obj. The linker searches
through the library file math.lib in the lib directory on
Drive B for routines and data used in the program. It then
creates an executable file named moda.exe, and a map file
named abc.map. The PAUSE option in the command line causes
the linker to pause while you change disks before creating
the executable file (see Section 7.3.2).

7.2.3 Using a Response File to Specify LINK Files

You can create a program by listing, in a response file, the
names of all the files to be processed, and by giving the
name of the response file on the LINK command line. The
simplest way to use a response file is with a command line
having the following form:

    LINK \@<filename>

You can also specify a response file at any prompt, or at
any position in a command line. The input from the response
file is treated exactly as though it had been entered at
prompts   or   in   a   command   line,   except   that
carriage-return/linefeed combinations in the file are
treated the same as the Return key in response to a prompt,
or a comma in a command line.

When you specify a response file, remember that the filename
must be the name of the response file, and that you must
precede it by an at sign (@). If the file is in another
directory or on another disk drive, you must provide a path
name.

You can name the response file anything you like. The file
content has the following general form:

<objectfiles>
[<executablefile>]
[<mapfile>]
[<libraryfiles>]

You can omit any elements that have already been provided at
prompts or with a partial command line.

You must place each group of filenames on a separate line.
If you have more names than can fit on one line, you can
continue the names on the next line by typing a plus sign
(+) as the last character in the current line. If you do
not supply a filename for a group, you must leave an empty
line. You can give options on any line.

You can place a semicolon (;) on any line in the response
file.   When LINK encounters the semicolon, it automatically
supplies default file names for all files you have not yet
named in the response file. The remainder of the response
file is ignored.

When you create a program with a response file, the linker
displays each response from your response file on the screen
in the form of prompts. If the response file does not
contain names for required files, LINK prompts for the
missing names and waits for you to enter responses.

Note

A response file should end with either a semicolon (;)
or a carriage-return/line-feed combination. If you
fail to provide a final carriage-return/linefeed in the
file, the linker will display the last line of the
response file and wait for you to press the Return key.

7.2.3.1 Example -

    moda modb modc startup /PAUSE
    abc
    b:\lib\math

The response file above tells the linker to ` link the four
object modules moda, modb, modc, and startup. LINK pauses
to let you swap disks before producing the executable file
moda.exe.   The linker also creates a map file, abc.map, and
searches the library, math.lib, in the \lib directory of
Drive B.

The following procedure combines all three methods of
supplying filenames. Assume you have a response file called
library that contains one line:

    lib1+lib2+lib3+lib4

Now start LINK with a partial command line:

    LINK object1 object2

LINK takes object1.obj and object2.obj as its object files, and prompts for the next file:

```
Run File [object1.EXE]: exec
List File [NUL.MAP]:
Libraries [.LIB]: @library
```

You enter exec so that the linker will name the executable file exec.exe. You then press the Return key to indicate that no map file is desired, and you enter @library so that the linker will read in the response file containing the four library-filenames.

7.2.4 Giving Search Paths with Libraries

You can direct LINK to search directories and disk drives for the libraries you have named in a command by specifying one or more search paths with the library names, or by assigning the search paths to the environment variable LIB before you invoke LINK. Environment variables are explained under the SET command in Chapter 3, "MS-DOS Commands."

A search path is the path specification of a directory or drive name. You type search paths along with library names on the LINK command line or in response to the Libraries prompt. You can specify up to 16 search paths. You can also assign the search paths to the LIB environment variable, using the MS-DOS SET command. In the latter case, you must separate the search paths by semicolons (;).

If you include a drive or directory name in the filename for a library in the LINK command line, the linker searches there only. But if you don't give a drive or directory name, LINK searches for library files in the following order:

1. First, the linker searches the current drive and directory.

2. If the library is not found and one or more search paths have been given in the command line, the linker searches the specified search paths in the order in which you gave them.

3. If the library is still not found and you have set a search path by using the LIB environment variable, the linker searches there.

4. If the library is still not found, LINK prints an error message.

7.2.4.1 **Examples** –

     LINK file,,file,A:\altlib\math.lib+common+B:+D:\lib\

In the first example, the linker searches only the \altlib
directory on drive A to find the library, math.lib, but to
find common.lib it will search the current directory on the
current drive, the current directory on drive B, and
finally, the directory \lib on drive D.

     SET LIB=C:\lib;U:\system\lib
     LINK file,,file.map,math+common

In the second example, LINK searches the current directory,
the directory \lib on drive C, and the directory systemlib
on drive U to find the libraries, math.lib and common.lib.

7.2.5 **The Map File**

The map file lists the names, load addresses, and lengths of
all segments in a program. It also lists the names and load
addresses of any groups in the program, the program start
address, and messages about any errors it may have
encountered. If the /MAP option is used in the LINK command
line, the map file lists the names and load addresses of all
public symbols.

Segment information has the general form shown in this
example:

Start	Stop	Length	Name	Class
00000H	0172CH	0172DH	TEXT	CODE
01730H	01E19H	006EAH	DATA	DATA

The Start and Stop columns show the 20-bit addresses (in
hexadecimal) of the first and last byte in each segment.
These addresses are relative to the beginning of the load
module, which is assumed to be address 0000H. The operating
system chooses its own starting address when the program is
actually loaded. The Length column gives the length of the
segment in bytes; the Name column, the name of the segment;
and the Class column, the segment's class name.

Group information has the general form:

Origin	Group
0000:0	IGROUP
0173:0	DGROUP

In this example, IGROUP is the name of the code
(instruction) group and DGROUP is the name of the data
group.

At the end of the listing file, the linker gives you the
address of the program entry point.

If you specify the /MAP option in the LINK command line, the
linker adds a public-symbol list to the map file. The
symbols are presented twice: once in alphabetical order,
then in the order of their load addresses. The list has the
general form shown in the following example:

```
Address              Publics by Name

0000:1567            BRK
0000:1696            CHMOD
0000:01DB            CHKSTK
0000:131C            CLEARERR
0173:0035            FAC

Address              Publics by Value

0000:01DB            CHKSTK
0000:131C            CLEARERR
0000:1567            BRK
0000:1696            CHMOD
0000:0035            FAC
```

The addresses of the public symbols are in segment:offset
format. They show the location of the symbol relative to
the beginning of the load module, which is assumed to be at
address 0000:0000.

When the /HIGH and /DSALLOCATE options are used (see
Sections 7.3.10 and 7.3.11) and the program's code and data
combined do not exceed 64K, the map file may show symbols
that have unusually large segment addresses. These
addresses indicate a symbol whose location is below the
actual start of the program code and data. For example, the
symbol entry:

FFF0:0A20   TEMPLATE

shows that TEMPLATE is located below the start of the
program. Note that the 20-bit address of TEMPLATE is
00920h.

7.2.6 The Temporary Disk File — VM.TMP

LINK normally uses available memory for the link session.
If it runs out of available memory, it creates a temporary
disk file named VM.TMP in the current working directory.
When the linker creates this file, it displays the following
message:

VM.TMP has been created.
Do not change diskette in drive letter

Note that letter will be the proper drive name. After this
message appears, you must not remove the disk from the drive
specified by letter until the link session ends. The /PAUSE
option cannot be used if a temporary file is created. After
LINK has created the executable file, it deletes the
temporary file automatically.

Note

Do not use the filename, VM.TMP, for your own files.
When the linker creates the temporary file, it destroys
any previous file that have the same name.

7.3 USING LINK OPTIONS

The linker options specify and control the tasks that LINK
performs. All options begin with the linker-option
character, which is the forward slash (/). You can use an
option anywhere on a LINK command line.

LINK has the following options:

Option Name	Action
/HELP	Shows options list
/PAUSE	Pauses during linking
/EXEPACK	Packs executable file
/MAP	Creates public symbol map
/LINENUMBERS	Copies line numbers to map file
/NOIGNORECASE	Preserves case sensitivity in names
/NODEFAULTLIBRARYSEARCH	Overrides default libraries
/STACK	Sets maximum allocation space
/HIGH	Sets high load address
/DSALLOCATE	Allocates data group
/NOGROUPASSOCIATION	Sets group association override
/OVERLAYINTERRUPT	Sets overlay interrupt
/SEGMENTS	Sets maximum number of segments
/DOSSEG	Specifies MS-DOS segment ordering

You can abbreviate option names as long as your
abbreviations contain enough letters to distinguish the
specified option from other options. Minimum abbreviations
are listed for each option.

Many of the LINK options set values in the MS-DOS program
header. You will understand these options better if you
understand how the header is organized. The program header
is described in the MS-DOS Programmer's Reference and in
some reference books on MS-DOS.

7.3.1 Viewing the Options List

7.3.1.1 Syntax -

/HELP

The /HELP option causes LINK to write a list of the
available options to the screen. This may be convenient if
you need a reminder of the available options. You should
not give a filename when using the /HELP option.

Minimum abbreviation: /HE

7.3.1.2 Example -

    LINK /HELP

7.3.2 Pausing to Change Disks

7.3.2.1 Syntax -

/PAUSE

The /PAUSE option causes LINK to pause before writing the
executable file to disk so that you can swap disks before
the linker writes the executable (.EXE) file to disk.

If you specify the /PAUSE switch, the linker displays the
following message before creating the run file:

About to generate .EXE file
Change diskette in drive letter and press <ENTER>

Note that letter is the proper drive name. This message
appears after the linker has read data from the object files
and library files, and after it has written data to the map
file, if you specified one. LINK resumes processing when
you press the Return key. After LINK writes the executable
file to disk, the following message appears:

Please replace original diskette
in drive letter and press <ENTER>

Minimum abbreviation: /P

Note

Do not remove the disk used for the VM.TMP file, if
such a file has been created. If the temporary disk
message appears when you have specified the /PAUSE
option, you should press Control-C to terminate the
LINK session. Rearrange your files so that the
temporary file and the executable file can be written
to the same disk, then try again.

7.3.2.2 Example –

     LINK file/PAUSE,file,,\lib\math

This command causes the linker to pause just before creating
the executable file, file.exe. After creating the
executable file, LINK pauses again to let you replace the
original disk.

7.3.3 Packing Executable Files

7.3.3.1 Syntax –

/EXEPACK

The /EXEPACK option directs LINK to remove sequences of
repeated bytes (typically nulls) and optimize the load-time
relocation table before creating the executable file.
Executable files linked with the option may be smaller, and
thus load faster than files linked without the option.
However, the Microsoft Symbolic Debug Utility (SYMDEB)
cannot be used with packed files.

The /EXEPACK option does not always save a significant
amount of disk space (and may sometimes actually increase
file size). Programs that have a large number of load-time
relocations (about 500 or more) and long streams of repeated
characters will usually be shorter if packed. If you're not
sure if your program meets these conditions, try linking it
both ways and compare the results.

Minimum abbreviation: /E

7.3.3.2 Example -

    LINK program /E ;

This example creates a packed version of file program.exe.

7.3.4 Producing a Public-Symbol Map

7.3.4.1 Syntax -

/MAP

The /MAP option causes LINK to produce a listing of all
public symbols declared in your program. This list is
copied to the map file that LINK creates. For a complete
description of the listing-file format, see Section 7.2.5.
The /MAP option is required if you want to use SYMDEB for
symbolic debugging.

Minimum abbreviation: /M

```
+-----------------------------------------------------------+
|                          Note                             |
|                                                           |
| If you do not specify a map file in a LINK command, you   |
| can use the /MAP option to force the linker to create a   |
| map file. LINK gives the forced map file the same         |
| filename as the first object file specified in the        |
| command. It also adds the default extension .MAP.         |
+-----------------------------------------------------------+
```

7.3.4.2 Example –

    LINK file,,/MAP;

This command creates a map of all public symbols in the file
file.obj.

7.3.5 Copying Line Numbers to the Map File

7.3.5.1 Syntax –

/LINENUMBERS

The /LINENUMBERS option directs the linker to copy the
starting address of each program source line to a map file.
The starting address is actually the address of the first
instruction that corresponds to the source line. You can
use the MAPSYM program to copy line-number data to a symbol
file, which can then by used by SYMDEB.

The linker copies the line-number data only if you give a
map-file name in the LINK command line, and only if the
given object file has line-number information. Line
numbering is available in some high-level-language
compilers, including Microsoft FORTRAN and Pascal, versions
3.0 and later, and Microsoft C, version 2.0 and later.

MASM does not copy line-number information to the object
file. If an object file has no line-number information, the
linker ignores the /LINENUMBERS option.

Minimum abbreviation: /LI

```
+--------------------------------------------------------+
|                          Note                          |
|                                                        |
|  If you do not specify a map file in a LINK command,   |
|  you can still use the /LINENUMBERS option to force    |
|  the linker to create a map file. Just place the       |
|  option at or before the List File prompt. LINK gives  |
|  the forced map file the same filename as the first    |
|  object file that you specified in the command and     |
|  gives it the default extension, .MAP.                  |
+--------------------------------------------------------+
```

7.3.5.2 Example -

      LINK file/LINENUMBERS,,em+slibfp

This example causes the line-number information in the object file file.obj to be copied to the map file file.map.

7.3.6 Preserving Lowercase

7.3.6.1 Syntax -

/NOIGNORECASE

The /NOIGNORECASE option directs LINK to treat uppercase and lowercase letters in symbol names as distinct letters. Normally, LINK considers uppercase and lowercase letters to be identical, treating the names TWO, two, and Two as the same symbol. When you use the /NOIGNORECASE option, the linker treats TWO, Two, and two as different symbols.

Typically, you use the /NOIGNORECASE option with object files created by high-level-language compilers. Some compilers treat uppercase and lowercase letters as distinct letters and assume the linker does the same.

If you are linking modules, created with MASM, to modules created with a case-sensitive language such as C, make sure public symbols have the same sensitivity in both modules. For example, you could make all variables in C distinctive by spelling, regardless of case, and then link without the /NOIGNORECASE option. Another alternative would be to use the /ML or MX option to make public variables in MASM case-sensitive. Then link with the /NOIGNORECASE option.

Minimum abbreviation: /NOI

7.3.6.2 Example -

      LINK file1+file2/NOI,,,em+mlibfp

This command causes the linker to treat uppercase and lowercase letters in symbol names as distinct letters. The object file, file.obj, is linked with routines from the standard C language library, \Slibc.lib, located in the \lib directory. The C language expects uppercase and lowercase letters to be treated as distinct.

7.3.7 Ignoring Default Libraries

7.3.7.1 Syntax -

/NODEFAULTLIBRARYSEARCH

The /NODEFAULTLIBRARYSEARCH option directs the linker to
ignore any library names it may find in an object file. A
high-level-language compiler may add a library name to an
object file to ensure that a default set of libraries is
linked with the program. Using this option overrides these
default libraries and lets you explicitly name the libraries
you want by including them on the LINK command line.

Minimum abbreviation: /NOD

7.3.7.2 Example -

LINK startup+file/NOD,,,em+slibfp+slibc

This example links the object files, startup.obj and
file.obj with routines from the libraries em, slibfp, and
slibc. Any default libraries that may have been named in
startup.obj or file.obj are ignored.

7.3.8 Setting the Stack Size

7.3.8.1 Syntax -

/STACK:<size>

The /STACK option sets the program stack to the number of
bytes given by size. The linker usually calculates a
program's stack size automatically, basing the size on the
size of any stack segments given in the object files. If
/STACK is given, the linker uses the given size in place of
any value it may have calculated.

The size can be any positive integer value in the range 1 to
65535. The value can be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal
number. Octal numbers must begin with a zero. Hexadecimal
numbers must begin with a leading zero followed by a
lowercase x. For example, 0x1B.

By using the EXEMOD utility, you can also change the stack
size after linking.

Minimum abbreviation: /ST

7.3.8.2 Examples -

    LINK file/STACK:512,,;

The first example sets the stack size to 512 bytes.

    LINK moda+modb,run/ST:0xFF,ab,\lib\start;

The second example sets the stack size to 255 (FFh) bytes.

    LINK startup+file/ST:030,,;

The final example sets the stack size to 24 (30 octal)
bytes.

7.3.9 Setting the Maximum Allocation Space

7.3.9.1 Syntax -

/CPARMAXALLOC:<number>

The /CPARMAXALLOC option sets the maximum number of 16-byte
paragraphs needed by a program when it is loaded into
memory.   The operating system uses this   number   when
allocating space for a program prior to loading it.

LINK normally sets the maximum number of paragraphs to
65535.   Since this represents all addressable memory, the
operating system always denies the request and allocates the
largest contiguous block of memory it can find. If you use
the /CPARMAXALLOC option, the operating system allocates no
more space than given by this option. This means any
additional space in memory is free for other programs.

The <number> can be any integer value in the range 1 to
65535.   It must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal number.
Octal numbers must begin with a zero.   Hexadecimal values
must begin with a leading zero followed by a lowercase x.
For example, 0x2B.

If <number> is less than the minimum number of paragraphs
needed by the program, LINK ignores your request and sets
the maximum value equal to the minimum needed. The minimum
number of paragraphs needed by a program is never less than
the number of paragraphs of code and data in the program.

Minimum abbreviation: /C

7.3.9.2 Examples −

    LINK file/C:15,,;

The first example sets the maximum allocation to 15 paragraphs.

    LINK moda+modb,run/CPARMAXALLOC:0xff,ab;

The second example sets the maximum allocation to 255 (FFh) paragraphs.

    LINK startup+file,/C:030,;

The final example sets the maximum allocation to 24 (30 octal) paragraphs.

7.3.10 Setting a High Start Address

7.3.10.1 Syntax −

/HIGH

The /HIGH option sets a program's starting address to the highest possible address in free memory. If you don't use the /HIGH option, LINK sets the program's starting address as low as possible in memory.

Minimum abbreviation: /H

7.3.10.2 Example −

    LINK startup+file/HIGH,,;

This example sets the starting address of the program in file.exe to the highest possible address in free memory.

7.3.11 Allocating a Data Group

7.3.11.1 Syntax -

/DSALLOCATE

The /DSALLOCATE option directs the linker to reverse its
normal processing when assigning addresses to items
belonging to the group named DGROUP. Normally, LINK assigns
the offset 0000h to the lowest byte in a group. If you use
/DSALLOCATE, LINK assigns the offset FFFFh to the highest
byte in the group. The result is data that appear to be
loaded as high as possible in the memory segment containing
DGROUP.

Typically, you use the /DSALLOCATE option with the /HIGH
option to take advantage of unused memory before the start
of the program. The linker assumes that all free bytes in
DGROUP occupy the memory preceding the program. To use the
group, you must set a segment register to the start address
of DGROUP.

Minimum abbreviation: /D

7.3.11.2 Example -

       LINK startup+file/HIGH/DSALLOCATE,,,em+mlibfp

This example directs the linker to place the program as high
in memory as possible, then adjust the offsets of all data
items in DGROUP so that they are loaded as high as possible
within the group.

7.3.12 Removing Groups From a Program

7.3.12.1 Syntax -

/NOGROUPASSOCIATION

The /NOGROUPASSOCIATION option directs LINK to ignore group
associations when assigning addresses to data and code
items.

Minimum abbreviation: /NOG

```
┌────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│                        Note                          │
│                                                      │
│   This option exists strictly for compatibility with older │
│   versions of FORTRAN and Pascal (Microsoft version 3.13  │
│   or earlier, or any IBM version prior to 2.0).  You │
│   should never use the /NOGROUPASSOCIATION option except │
│   to link with object files produced by those compilers, │
│   or with the run-time libraries that accompany the old │
│   compilers.                                         │
│                                                      │
└────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

7.3.13 Setting the Overlay Interrupt

7.3.13.1 Syntax –

/OVERLAYINTERRUPT:<number>

The /OVERLAYINTERRUPT option sets the interrupt number of the overlay loading routine to number. This option overrides the normal overlay interrupt number (03Fh).

The number can be any integer value in the range 0 to 255. It must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal number. Octal numbers must have a leading zero. Hexadecimal numbers must start with a leading zero followed by a lowercase x. For example, 0x3B.

MASM does not have an overlay manager. Therefore, you can only use this option if you are linking with a run-time module from a language compiler that supports overlays. Check your compiler documentation, since this option is not appropriate for use with some compilers.

Minimum abbreviation: /O

```
┌────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│                        Note                          │
│   You should not use interrupt numbers that conflict with │
│   the standard MS-DOS interrupts.                    │
│                                                      │
└────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

7.3.13.2 Examples -

     LINK file/O:255,,,87+slibfp

The first example sets the overlay interrupt number to 255.

     LINK moda+modb, run/OVERLAY:0xff,ab.map,em+mlibfp

The second example sets the overlay interrupt number to 255 (FFh).

     LINK startup+file,/O:0377,,em+mlibfp

The final example sets the overlay interrupt number to 255 (377 octal).

7.3.14 Setting the Maximum Number of Segments

7.3.14.1 Syntax -

/SEGMENTS:<number>

The /SEGMENTS option directs the linker to process no more than <number> segments per program. If it encounters more than the given limit, the linker displays an error message, and stops linking. You use this option to override the default limit of 128 segments.

If you do not use /SEGMENTS, the linker allocates enough memory space to process up to 128 segments. If your program has more than 128 segments, you will need to set the segment limit higher to increase the number of segments that LINK can process. If you get the following LINK error message:

Segment limit set too high

you should set the segment limit lower.

The number can be any integer value in the range 1 to 1024. It must be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal number. Octal numbers must have a leading zero. Hexadecimal numbers must start with a leading zero followed by a lowercase x. For example, 0x4B.

Minimum abbreviation: /SE

7.3.14.2 Examples –

    LINK file/SE:192,,;

The first example sets the segment limit to 192.

    LINK moda+modb,run/SEGMENTS:0xff,ab,em+mlibfp;

The second example sets the segment limit to 255 (FFh).

7.3.15 Using DOS Segment Order

7.3.15.1 Syntax –

/DOSSEG

The /DOSSEG option causes LINK to arrange all segments in
the executable file according to the MS-DOS segment-ordering
convention. This convention has the following rules:

1. All segments having the class name CODE are placed
    at the beginning of the executable file.

2. Any other segments that do not belong to the group
    named DGROUP are placed immediately after the CODE
    segments.

3. All segments belonging to DGROUP are placed at the
    end of the file.

If you do not use the /DOSSEG option, see Section 7.4.3 for
an explanation of the normal segment order.

Minimum abbreviation: /DO

7.3.15.2 Example –

    LINK start+test/DOSSEG,,,math+common

This command causes the linker to create an executable file,
named file.exe, whose segments are arranged according to the
MS-DOS segment-ordering convention. The segments in the
object files start.obj and test.obj, and any segments copied
from the libraries, math.lib and common.lib, are arranged in
the order specified above.

7.4 HOW LINK WORKS

LINK creates an executable file by concatenating a program's
code and data segments according to the instructions in the
original source files. These concatenated segments form an
"executable image," that is copied directly into memory when
you invoke the program for execution. Thus, the order and
manner in which the linker copies segments to the executable
file defines the order and manner in which it loads the
segments into memory.

You can tell the linker how to link a program's segments by
using a SEGMENT directive to supply segment attributes or by
using the GROUP directive to form segment groups.   These
directives define group associations, classes, and align and
combine types that define the order and relative starting
addresses of all segments in a program. This information
works in addition to any information you supply through
command-line options.

The following sections explain the process that LINK uses to
concatenate segments and resolve references to items in
memory.

7.4.1 Alignment of Segments

The linker uses a segment's align type to set the starting
address for the segment. The align types are byte, word,
para, and page.   These types correspond to starting
addresses at byte, word, paragraph, and page boundaries,
representing addresses that are multiples of 1, 2, 16, and
256, respectively. The default align type is para.

When the linker encounters a segment, it checks the align
type before copying the segment to the executable file. If
the align type is word, para, or page, the linker checks the
executable image to see if the last byte copied ends at an
appropriate boundary. If not, LINK pads the image with
extra null bytes.

7.4.2 Frame Number

The linker computes a starting address for each segment in a
program. The starting address is based on a segment's align
type and the size of the segments already copied to the
executable file.   The address consists of an offset and a
canonical frame number, which specifies the address of the
first paragraph in memory that contains one or more bytes of
the segment. A frame number is always a multiple of 16 (a
paragraph address).   But the offset is the number of bytes
from the start of the paragraph to the first byte in the

segment. For byte and word align types, the offset may be nonzero. The offset is always zero for para and page align types.

The frame number of a segment can be obtained from a LINK file. The frame number is the first five hexadecimal digits of the start address specified for the segment.

7.4.3 Order of Segments

LINK copies segments to the executable file in the same order that it encounters them in the object files. The linker maintains this order throughout the program unless it encounters two or more segments with the same class name. Segments with identical class names belong to the same class type, and are copied to the executable file as contiguous blocks.

For a more detailed discussion of segment loading order and methods of controlling loading order by assigning class types, see the Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference Manual.

7.4.4 Combined Segments

LINK uses combine types to determine whether two or more segments sharing the same segment name should be combined into a single, large segment. The combine types are public, stack, common, memory, at, and private. Combine types are also described in the Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference Manual.

If a segment has combine type public, the linker automatically combines it with any other segments that have the same name and belong to the same class. When LINK combines segments, it ensures that the segments are contiguous and that all addresses in the segments can be accessed using an offset from the same frame address. The result is the same as if the segment were defined as a whole in the source file.

The linker preserves each segment's align type. This means that even though the segments belong to a single, large segment, the code and data in the segments retain their original align type. If the combined segments exceed 64K, LINK displays an error message.

If a segment has combine type stack, the linker carries out the same combine operation as for public segments. The only difference is that stack segments cause LINK to copy an initial stack-pointer value to the executable file. This stack-pointer value is the offset to the end of the first

stack · segment (or combined stack segment) that the linker
encounters. If you use the stack type for stack segments,
you do not need to give instructions that load the segment
into the SS register.

If a segment has combine type common, the linker combines it
automatically with any other segments that have the same
name and belong to the same class. When LINK combines
common segments, however, it places the start of each
segment at the same address, creating a series of
overlapping segments. The result is a single segment which
is no larger than the largest of the combined segments.

The linker treats segments with combine type memory exactly
like segments with combine type public. MASM provides
combine type memory for compatibility with linkers that
support a separate combine type for memory segments.

A segment has combine type private only if no explicit
combine type is defined for it in the source file. LINK
does not combine private segments. ·

7.4.5 Groups

Groups permit non-contiguous segments that do not belong to
the same class to be addressable relative to the same frame
address. When LINK encounters a group, it adjusts all
memory references to items in the group so that they are
relative to the same frame address.

Segments in a group do not have to be contiguous, do not
have to belong to the same class, and do not have to have
the same combine type. The only requirement is that all
segments in the group fit within 64K.

Groups do not affect the order in which the segments are
loaded. Unless you use class names and enter object files
in the right order, there is no guarantee that the segments
will be contiguous. In fact, the linker may place segments
that do not belong to the group in the same 64K of memory.
Although LINK does not explicitly check that all segments in
a group fit within 64K of memory, the linker is likely to
encounter a "fixup-overflow" error if this requirement is
not met.

Groups, and how to define them, are discussed in the
Microsoft Macro Assembler Reference Manual.

7.4.6 Fixups

Once the starting address of each segment in a program is
known, and all segment combinations and groups have been
established, the linker can fix up any unresolved references
to labels and variables. To fix up unresolved references,
the linker computes an appropriate offset and segment
address and replaces the temporary values, generated by the
assembler, with the new values.

LINK carries out fixups for four different references:

- Short

- Near self-relative

- Near segment-relative

- Long

The size of the value to be computed depends on the type of
reference. If LINK discovers an error in the anticipated
size of a reference, it displays a fixup-overflow message.
This can happen, for example, if a program attempts to use a
16-bit offset to reach an instruction in a segment that has
a different frame address. It can also occur if all
segments in a group do not fit within a single 64K block of
memory.

A short reference occurs in JMP instructions that attempt to
pass control to labeled instructions that are in the same
segment or group. The target instruction must be no more
than 128 bytes from the point of reference. The linker
computes a signed, 8-bit number for this reference and
displays an error message if the target instruction belongs
to a different segment or group (has a different frame
address), or if the target is more than 128 bytes distant
(in either direction).

A near self-relative reference occurs in instructions which
access data relative to the same segment or group. The
linker computes a 16-bit offset for this reference and
displays an error message if the data are not in the same
segment or group.

A near segment-relative reference occurs in instructions
which attempt to access data that is in a specified segment
or group, or that is relative to a specified segment
register. LINK computes a 16-bit offset for this reference
and displays an error message if the offset of the target
within the specified frame is greater than 64K or less than
0, or if the beginning of the canonical frame of the target
is not addressable.

A long reference occurs in CALL instructions that attempt to access an instruction in another segment or group. LINK computes a 16-bit frame address and 16-bit offset for this reference. The linker displays an error message if the computed offset is greater than 64K or less than 0, or if the beginning of the canonical frame of the target is not addressable.

Chapter 8
DEBUG

CHAPTER 8

DEBUG

8.1 INTRODUCTION

The Microsoft DEBUG Utility (DEBUG) is a debugging program
that provides a controlled testing environment for binary
and executable object files. Note that EDLIN is used to
alter source files; DEBUG is EDLIN's counterpart for binary
files. DEBUG eliminates the need to reassemble a program to
see if a problem has been fixed by a minor change. It
allows you to alter the contents of a file or the contents
of a CPU register, and then to immediately reexecute a
program to check on the validity of the changes.

All DEBUG commands may be aborted at any time by pressing
Control-C. Control-S suspends the display, so that you can
read it before the output scrolls away. Entering any key
other than Control-C or Control-S restarts the display. All
of these commands are consistent with the control character
functions available at the MS-DOS command level.

8.2 HOW TO START DEBUG

DEBUG may be started two ways. By the first method, you
type all commands in response to the DEBUG prompt (a
hyphen). By the second method, you type all commands on the
line used to start DEBUG.

Summary of Methods to Start DEBUG

Method 1	DEBUG
Method 2	DEBUG [<filespec> [<arglist>]]

8.2.1 Method 1: DEBUG

To start DEBUG using method 1, type:

        DEBUG

DEBUG responds with the hyphen (-) prompt, signaling that it
is ready to accept your commands. Since no filename has
been specified, current memory, disk sectors, or disk files
can be worked on by using other commands.

Warnings

1. When DEBUG (Version 2.0) is started, it sets up a
    program header at offset 0 in the program work
    area. On previous versions of DEBUG, you could
    overwrite this header. You can still overwrite the
    default header if no <filespec> is given to DEBUG.
    If you are debugging a .COM or .EXE file, however,
    do not tamper with the program header below address
    5CH, or DEBUG will terminate.

2. Do not restart a program after the "Program
    terminated normally" message is displayed. You
    must reload the program with the N and L commands
    for it to run properly.

8.2.2 Method 2: Command Line

To start DEBUG using a command line, type:

        DEBUG [<filespec> [<arglist>]

For example, if a <filespec> is specified, then the
following is a typical command to start DEBUG:

        DEBUG FILE.EXE

DEBUG then loads FILE.EXE into memory starting at 100
hexadecimal in the lowest available segment. The BX:CX
registers are loaded with the number of bytes placed into
memory.

An <arglist> may be specified if <filespec> is present. The
<arglist> is a list of filename parameters and switches that
are to be passed to the program <filespec>. Thus, when
<filespec> is loaded into memory, it is loaded as if it had
been started with the command:

        <filespec> <arglist>

Here, <filespec> is the file to be debugged, and the
<arglist> is the rest of the command line that is used when
<filespec> is invoked and loaded into memory.

8.3 COMMAND INFORMATION

Each DEBUG command consists of a single letter followed by
one   or   more   parameters.   Additionally, the control
characters and the special editing functions described in
the MS-DOS User's Guide, apply inside DEBUG.

If a syntax error occurs in a DEBUG command, DEBUG reprints
the command line and indicates the error with an up-arrow
(^) and the word "error."

For example:

        dcs:100 cs:110
              ^ error

Any combination of uppercase and lowercase letters may be
used in commands and parameters.

The DEBUG commands are summarized in Table 8.1 and are
described   in   detail, with examples, following the
description of command parameters.

Table 8.1   DEBUG Commands

DEBUG Command	Function
A[<address>]	Assemble
C<range> <address>	Compare
D[<range>]	Dump
E<address> [<list>]	Enter
F<range> <list>	Fill
G[=<address> [<address>...]]	Go
H<value> <value>	Hex
I<value>	Input
L[<address> [<drive:><record><record>]]	Load
M<range> <address>	Move
N<filename>[<filename>]	Name
O<value> <byte>	Output
Q	Quit
R[<register-name>]	Register
S<range> <list>	Search
T[=<address>][<value>]	Trace
U[<range>]	Unassemble
W[<address> [<drive:><record><record>]]	Write

8.4 PARAMETERS

All DEBUG commands accept parameters, except the Quit
command. Parameters may be separated by delimiters (spaces
or commas), but a delimiter is required only between two
consecutive hexadecimal values. Thus, the following
commands are equivalent:

        dcs:100 110
        d cs:100 110
        d,cs:100,110

PARAMETER   DEFINITION

<drive:>   A one-digit hexadecimal value to indicate which
             drive a file will be loaded from or written to.
             The valid values are 0-3. These values
             designate the drives as follows: 0=A:, 1=B:,
             2=C:, 3=D:.

<byte>   A two-digit hexadecimal value to be placed in or
             read from an address or register.

<record>   A 1- to 3-digit hexadecimal value used to
             indicate the logical record number on the disk
             and the number of disk sectors to be written or
             loaded. Logical records correspond to sectors.
             However, their numbering differs since they
             represent the entire disk space.

<value>   A hexadecimal value up to four digits used to
             specify a port number or the number of times a
             command should repeat its functions.

<address>   A two-part designation consisting of either an
             alphabetic segment register designation or a
             four-digit segment address plus an offset value.
             The segment designation or segment address may
             be omitted, in which case the default segment is
             used.   DS is the default segment for all
             commands except G, L, T, U, and W, for which the
             default segment is CS. All numeric values are
             hexadecimal.

             For example:

                 CS:0100
                 04BA:0100

             The colon is required between a segment
             designation (whether numeric or alphabetic) and
             an offset.

<range>   Two <address>es: e.g., <address> <address>;   or
             one   <address>, an L, and a <value>: e.g.,
             <address> L <value> where <value> is the number
             of lines the command should operate on, and L80
             is assumed. The last form cannot be used if
             another hex value follows the <range>, since the
             hex value would be interpreted as the second
             <address> of the <range>.

             Examples:

                  CS:100 110
                  CS:100 L 10
                  CS:100

             The following is illegal:

                  CS:100 CS:110
                          ^ error

             The limit for <range> is 10000 hex. To specify
             a <value> of 10000 hex within four digits, type
             0000 (or 0).

<list>   A series of <byte> values or of <string>s.
             <list> must be the last parameter on the command
             line.

                  Example:

                  fcs:100 42 45 52 54 41

<string>   Any number of characters enclosed in quote
             marks.   Quote marks may be either single (') or
             double("). If the delimiter quote marks must
             appear within a <string>, the quote marks must
             be doubled. For example, the following strings
             are legal:

                  'This is a "string" is okay.'
                  'This is a ''string'' is okay.'

             However, this string is illegal:

                  'This is a 'string' is not.'

             Similarly, these strings are legal:

                  "This is a 'string' is okay."
                  "This is a ""string"" is okay."

However, this string is illegal:

"This is a "string" is not."

Note that the double quote marks are not
necessary in the following strings:

"This is a ''string'' is not necessary."
'This is a ""string"" is not necessary.'

The ASCII values of the characters in the string
are used as a <list> of byte values.

NAME

        Assemble

PURPOSE

        Assembles 8086/8087/8088 mnemonics directly
        into memory.

SYNTAX

        A[<address>]

COMMENTS

        If a syntax error is found, DEBUG responds with

            ^Error

        and redisplays the current assembly address.

        All numeric values are hexadecimal and must be
        entered as 1-4 characters. Prefix mnemonics
        must be specified in front of the opcode to
        which they refer. They may also be entered on
        a separate line.

        The segment override mnemonics are CS:, DS:,
        ES:, and SS:. The mnemonic for the far return
        is RETF. String manipulation mnemonics must
        explicitly state the string size. For example,
        use MOVSW to move word strings and MOVSB to
        move byte strings.

        The assembler will automatically assemble
        short, near or far jumps and calls, depending
        on byte displacement to the destination
        address. These may be overridden with the NEAR
        or FAR prefix. For example:

        0100:0500 JMP   502   ; a 2-byte short jump
        0100:0502 JMP   NEAR 505   ; a 3-byte near jump
        0100:505 JMP   FAR 50A   ; a 5-byte far jump

        The NEAR prefix may be abbreviated to NE, but
        the FAR prefix cannot be abbreviated.

        DEBUG cannot tell whether some operands refer
        to a word memory location or to a byte memory
        location. In this case, the data type must be
        explicitly stated with the prefix "WORD PTR" or
        "BYTE PTR". Acceptable abbreviations are "WO"
        and "BY". For example:

            NEG   BYTE PTR [128]
            DEC   WO [SI]

DEBUG also cannot tell whether an operand
refers to a memory location or to an immediate
operand. DEBUG uses the common convention that
operands enclosed in square brackets refer to
memory. For example:

```
MOV     AX,21      ; Load AX with 21H
MOV     AX,[21]    ; Load AX with the
                   ; contents
                   ; of memory location 21H
```

Two popular pseudo-instructions are available
with Assemble. The DB opcode will assemble
byte values directly into memory. The DW
opcode will assemble word values directly into
memory. For example:

```
DB      1,2,3,4,"THIS IS AN EXAMPLE"
DB      'THIS IS A QUOTE: "'
DB      "THIS IS A QUOTE: '"

DW      1000,2000,3000,"BACH"
```

Assemble supports all forms of register
indirect commands. For example:

```
ADD     BX,34[BP+2].[SI-1]
POP     [BP+DI]
PUSH    [SI]
```

All opcode synonyms are also supported. For
example:

```
LOOPZ   100
LOOPE   100

JA      200
JNBE    200
```

For 8087 opcodes, the WAIT or FWAIT must be
explicitly specified. For example:

```
FWAIT FADD ST,ST(3)   ; This line assembles
                      ; an FWAIT prefix
LD TBYTE PTR [BX]     ; This line does not
```

NAME

    Compare

PURPOSE

    Compares the portion of memory specified by
    <range> to a portion of the same size beginning
    at <address>.

SYNTAX

    C<range> <address>

COMMENTS

    If the two areas of memory are identical, there
    is no display and DEBUG returns with the MS-DOS
    prompt. If there <u>are</u> differences, they are
    displayed in this format:

        <address1> <byte1> <byte2> <address2>

EXAMPLE

    The following commands have the same effect:

        C100,1FF 300

        or

        C100L100 300

    Each command compares the block of memory from
    100 to 1FFH with the block of memory from 300
    to 3FFH.

NAME

    Dump

PURPOSE

    Displays the contents of the specified region
    of memory.

SYNTAX

    D[<range>]

COMMENTS

    If a range of addresses is specified, the
    contents of the range are displayed. If the D
    command is typed without parameters, 128 bytes
    are displayed at the first address (DS:100)
    after the address displayed by the previous
    Dump command.

    The dump is displayed in two portions: a
    hexadecimal dump (each byte is shown in
    hexadecimal value) and an ASCII dump (the bytes
    are shown in ASCII characters). Nonprinting
    characters are denoted by a period (.) in the
    ASCII portion of the display. Each display
    line shows 16 bytes with a hyphen between the
    eighth and ninth bytes. At times, displays are
    split in this manual to fit them on the page.
    Each displayed line begins on a 16-byte
    boundary.

    If you type the command:

        dcs:100 110

    DEBUG displays the dump in the following
    format:

    04BA:0100 42 45 52 54 41 ... 4E 44 TOM SAWYER

    If you type the following command:

        D

    the display is formatted as described above.
    Each line of the display begins with an
    address, incremented by 16 from the address on
    the previous line. Each subsequent D (typed
    without parameters) displays the bytes
    immediately following those last displayed.

If you type the command:

DCS:100 L 20

the display is formatted as described above, but 20H bytes are displayed.

If then you type the command:

DCS:100 115

the display is formatted as described above, but all the bytes in the range of lines from 100H to 115H in the CS segment are displayed.

NAME

Enter

PURPOSE

Enters byte values into memory at the specified
<address>.

SYNTAX

E<address>[<list>]

COMMENTS

If the optional <list> of values is typed, the
replacement   of   byte   values   occurs
automatically. (If an error occurs, no byte
values are changed.)

If the <address> is typed without the optional
<list>, DEBUG displays the address and its
contents, then repeats the address on the next
line and waits for your input. At this point,
the Enter command waits for you to perform one
of the following actions:

1. Replace a byte value with a value you type.
    Simply type the value after the current
    value. If the value typed in is not a
    legal hexadecimal value or if more than two
    digits are typed, the illegal or extra
    character is not echoed.

2. Press the Spacebar to advance to the next
    byte. To change the value, simply type the
    new value as described in (1.) above. If
    you space beyond an 8-byte boundary, DEBUG
    starts a new display line with the address
    displayed at the beginning.

3. Type a hyphen (-) to return to the
    preceding byte. If you decide to change a
    byte behind the current position, typing
    the hyphen returns the current position to
    the previous byte. When the hyphen is
    typed, a new line is started with the
    address and its byte value displayed.

4. Press the Return key to terminate the Enter
    command. The Return key may be pressed at
    any byte position.

EXAMPLE

     Assume that the following command is typed:

       ECS:100

    DEBUG displays:

       04BA:0100   EB._

    To change this value to 41, type 41 as shown:

       04BA:0100   EB.41_

    To step through the subsequent bytes, press the
    Spacebar to see:

       04BA:0100   EB.41   10.   00.   BC._

    To change BC to 42:

       04BA:0100   EB.41   10.   00.   BC.42_

    Now, realizing that 10 should be 6F, type the
    hyphen as many times as needed to return to
    byte 0101 (value 10), then replace 10 with 6F:

    04BA:0100   EB.41   10.   00.   BC.42-
    04BA:0102   00.-_
    04BA:0101   10.6F_

    Pressing the Return key ends the Enter command
    and returns to the DEBUG command level.

NAME

    Fill

PURPOSE

    Fills the addresses in the <range> with the
    values in the <list>.

SYNTAX

    F<range> <list>

COMMENTS

    If the <range> contains more bytes than the
    number of values in the <list>, the <list> will
    be used repeatedly until all bytes in the
    <range> are filled. If the <list> contains
    more values than the number of bytes in the
    <range>, the extra values in the <list> will be
    ignored. If any of the memory in the <range>
    is not valid (bad or nonexistent), the error
    will occur in all succeeding locations.

EXAMPLE

    Assume that the following command is typed:

        F04BA:100 L 100 42 45 52 54 41

    DEBUG fills memory locations 04BA:100 through
    04BA:1FF with the bytes specified. The five
    values are repeated until all 100H bytes are
    filled.

NAME

Go

PURPOSE

Executes the program currently in memory.

SYNTAX

G[=<address>[<address>...]]

COMMENTS

If only the Go command is typed, the program
executes as if the program had run outside
DEBUG.

If =<address> is set, execution begins at the
address specified. The equal sign (=) is
required, so that DEBUG can distinguish the
start =<address> from the breakpoint
<address>es.

With the other optional addresses set,
execution stops at the first <address>
encountered, regardless of that address'
position in the list of addresses to halt
execution or program branching. When program
execution reaches a breakpoint, the registers,
flags, and decoded instruction are displayed
for the last instruction executed. (The result
is the same as if you had typed the Register
command for the breakpoint address.)

Up to ten breakpoints may be set. Breakpoints
may be set only at addresses containing the
first byte of an 8086 opcode. If more than ten
breakpoints are set, DEBUG returns the BP Error
message.

The user stack pointer must be valid and have 6
bytes available for this command. The G
command uses an IRET instruction to cause a
jump to the program under test. The user stack
pointer is set, and the user flags, Code
Segment register, and Instruction Pointer are
pushed on the user stack. (Thus, if the user
stack is not valid or is too small, the
operating system may crash.) An interrupt code
(0CCH) is placed at the specified breakpoint
address(es).

When an instruction with the breakpoint code is
encountered, all breakpoint addresses are
restored to their original instructions. If

execution   is   not   halted   at   one   of   the
breakpoints,   the   interrupt   codes   are   not
replaced with the original instructions.

EXAMPLE

Assume that the following command is typed:

GCS:7550

The program currently in memory executes up to
the address 7550 in the CS segment. DEBUG then
displays registers and flags, after which the
Go command is terminated.

After a breakpoint has been encountered, if you
type the Go command again, then the program
executes just as if you had typed the filename
at   the   MS-DOS   command   level.   The   only
difference is that program execution begins at
the instruction after the breakpoint rather
than at the usual start address.

NAME
        Hex

PURPOSE
        Performs hexadecimal arithmetic on the two
        parameters specified.

SYNTAX
        H<value> <value>

COMMENTS
        First, DEBUG adds the two parameters, then
        subtracts the second parameter from the first.
        The results of the arithmetic are displayed on
        one line; first the sum, then the difference.

EXAMPLE
        Assume that the following command is typed:

            H19F 10A

        DEBUG performs the calculations   and   then
        displays the result:

            02A9   0095

NAME

Input

PURPOSE

Inputs and displays one byte from the port
specified by <value>.

SYNTAX

I<value>

COMMENTS

A 16-bit port address is allowed.

EXAMPLE

Assume that you type the following command:

I2F8

Assume also that the byte at the port is 42H.
DEBUG inputs the byte and displays the value:

42

NAME

    Load

PURPOSE

    Loads a file into memory.

SYNTAX

    L[<address> [<drive:> <record> <record>]]

COMMENTS

    Set BX:CX to the number of bytes read. The
    file must have been named either when DEBUG was
    started or with the N command. Both the DEBUG
    invocation and the N command format a filename
    properly in the normal format of a file control
    block at CS:5C.

    If the L command is typed without any
    parameters, DEBUG loads the file into memory
    beginning at address CS:100 and sets BX:CX to
    the number of bytes loaded. If the L command
    is typed with an address parameter, loading
    begins at the memory <address> specified. If L
    is typed with all parameters, absolute disk
    sectors are loaded, not a file. The <record>s
    are taken from the <drive:> specified (the
    drive designation is numeric here--0=A:, 1=B:,
    2=C:, etc.); DEBUG begins loading with the
    first <record> specified, and continues until
    the number of sectors specified in the second
    <record> have been loaded.

EXAMPLE

    Assume that the following commands are typed:

        A>DEBUG
        -NFILE.COM

    Now, to load FILE.COM, type:

        L

    DEBUG loads the file and then displays the
    DEBUG prompt. Assume that you want to load
    only portions of a file or certain records from
    a disk. To do this, type:

        L04BA:100 2 0F 6D

    DEBUG then loads 109 (6D hex) records beginning
    with logical record number 15 into memory

beginning at address 04BA:0100. When the
records have been loaded, DEBUG simply returns
the - prompt.

If the file has a .EXE extension, it is
relocated to the load address specified in the
header of the .EXE file: the <address>
parameter is always ignored for .EXE files.
The header itself is stripped off the .EXE file
before it is loaded into memory. Thus the size
of an .EXE file on disk will differ from its
size in memory.

If the file named by the Name command or
specified when DEBUG is started is a .HEX file,
then typing the L command with no parameters
causes DEBUG to load the file beginning at the
address specified in the .HEX file. If the L
command includes the option <address>, DEBUG
adds the <address> specified in the L command
to the address found in the .HEX file to
determine the start address for loading the
file.

NAME
        Move

PURPOSE
        Moves the block of memory specified by <range>
        to the location beginning at the <address>
        specified.

SYNTAX
        M<range> <address>

COMMENTS
        Overlapping moves (i.e., moves where part of
        the block overlaps some of the current
        addresses) are always performed without loss of
        data. Addresses that could be overwritten are
        moved first. The sequence for moves from
        higher addresses to lower addresses is to move
        the data beginning at the block's lowest
        address and then to work towards the highest.
        The sequence for moves from lower addresses to
        higher addresses is to move the data beginning
        at the block's highest address and to work
        towards the lowest.

        Note that if the addresses in the block being
        moved will not have new data written to them,
        the data there before the move will remain.
        The M command copies the data from one area
        into another, in the sequence described, and
        writes over the new addresses. This is why the
        sequence of the move is important.

EXAMPLE
        Assume that you type:

                MCS:100 110 CS:500

        DEBUG first moves address CS:110 to address
        CS:510, then CS:10F to CS:50F, and so on until
        CS:100 is moved to CS:500. You should type the
        D command, using the <address> typed for the M
        command, to review the results of the move.

NAME
        Name

PURPOSE
        Sets filenames.

SYNTAX
        N<filename>[<filename>...]

COMMENTS
        The Name command performs two functions.
        First, Name is used to assign a filename for a
        later Load or Write command. Thus, if you
        start DEBUG without naming any file to be
        debugged, then the N<filename> command must be
        typed before a file can be loaded. Second,
        Name is used to assign filename parameters to
        the file being debugged. In this case, Name
        accepts a list of parameters that are used by
        the file being debugged.

        These two functions overlap. Consider the
        following set of DEBUG commands:

            -NFILE1.EXE
            -L
            -G

        Because of the effects of the Name command,
        Name will perform the following steps:

        1. (N)ame assigns the filename FILE1.EXE to
            the filename to be used in any later Load
            or Write commands.

        2. (N)ame also assigns the filename FILE1.EXE
            to the first filename parameter used by any
            program that is later debugged.

        3. (L)oad loads FILE1.EXE into memory.

        4. (G)o causes FILE1.EXE to be executed with
            FILE1.EXE as the single filename parameter
            (that is, FILE1.EXE is executed as if
            FILE1.EXE had been typed at the command
            level).

A more useful chain of commands might look like
this:

```
-NFILE1.EXE
-L
-NFILE2.DAT FILE3.DAT
-G
```

Here, Name sets FILE1.EXE as the filename for
the subsequent Load command. The Load command
loads FILE1.EXE into memory, and then the Name
command is used again, this time to specify the
parameters to be used by FILE1.EXE. Finally,
when the Go command is executed, FILE1.EXE is
executed as if FILE1 FILE2.DAT FILE3.DAT had
been typed at the MS-DOS command level. Note
that if a Write command were executed at this
point, then FILE1.EXE--the file being
debugged--would be saved with the name
FILE2.DAT! To avoid such undesired results,
you should always execute a Name command before
either a Load or a Write.

There are four regions of memory that can be
affected by the Name command:

```
CS:5C   FCB for file 1
CS:6C   FCB for file 2
CS:80   Count of characters
CS:81   All characters typed
```

A File Control Block (FCB) for the first
filename parameter given to the Name command is
set up at CS:5C. If a second filename
parameter is typed, then an FCB is set up for
it beginning at CS:6C. The number of
characters typed in the Name command (exclusive
of the first character, "N") is given at
location CS:80. The actual stream of
characters given by the Name command (again,
exclusive of the letter "N") begins at CS:81.
Note that this stream of characters may contain
switches and delimiters that would be legal in
any command typed at the MS-DOS command level.

EXAMPLE
        A typical use of the Name command is:

```
DEBUG PROG.COM
-NPARAM1 PARAM2/C
-G
-
```

In this case, the Go command executes the file
in memory as if the following command line had
been typed:

PROG PARAM1 PARAM2/C

Testing and debugging therefore reflect a
normal runtime environment for PROG.COM.

NAME
        Output

PURPOSE
        Sends the <byte> specified to the output port
        specified by <value>.

SYNTAX
        O<value> <byte>

COMMENTS
        A 16-bit port address is allowed.

EXAMPLE
        Type:

            O2F8 4F

        DEBUG outputs the byte value 4F to output port
        2F8.

NAME
        Quit

PURPOSE
        Terminates the DEBUG utility.

SYNTAX
        Q

COMMENTS
        The Q command takes no parameters and exits
        DEBUG without saving the file currently being
        operated on. You are returned to the MS-DOS
        command level.

EXAMPLE
        To end the debugging session, type:

            Q<Return>

        DEBUG has been terminated, and control returns
        to the MS-DOS command level.

NAME

    Register

PURPOSE

    Displays the contents of one or more CPU
    registers.

SYNTAX

    R[<register-name>]

COMMENTS

    If no <register-name> is typed, the R command
    dumps the register save area and displays the
    contents of all registers and flags.

    If a register name is typed, the 16-bit value
    of that register is displayed in hexadecimal,
    and then a colon appears as a prompt. You then
    either type a <value> to change the register,
    or simply press the Return key if no change is
    wanted.

    The only valid <register-name>s are:

          AX   BP   SS
          BX   SI   CS
          CX   DI   IP   (IP and PC both refer
          DX   DS   PC   to the Instruction
          SP   ES   F   Pointer.)

    Any other entry for <register-name> results in
    a BR Error message.

    If F is entered as the <register-name>, DEBUG
    displays each flag with a two-character
    alphabetic code. To alter any flag, type the
    opposite two-letter code. The flags are either
    set or cleared.

The flags are listed below with their codes for
SET and CLEAR:

FLAG NAME	SET	CLEAR
Overflow	OV	NV
Direction	DN Decrement	UP Increment
Interrupt	EI Enabled	DI Disabled
Sign	NG Negative	PL Plus
Zero	ZR	NZ
Auxiliary Carry	AC	NA
Parity	PE Even	PO Odd
Carry	CY	NC

Whenever you type the command RF, the flags are
displayed in the order shown above in a row at
the beginning of a line. At the end of the
list of flags, DEBUG displays a hyphen (-).
You may enter new flag values as alphabetic
pairs. The new flag values can be entered in
any order. You do not have to leave spaces
between the flag entries. To exit the R
command, press the Return key. Flags for which
new values were not entered remain unchanged.

If more than one value is entered for a flag,
DEBUG returns a DF Error message. If you enter
a flag code other than those shown above, DEBUG
returns a BF Error message. In both cases, the
flags up to the error in the list are changed;
flags at and after the error are not.

At startup, the segment registers are set to
the bottom of free memory, the Instruction
Pointer is set to 0100H, all flags are cleared,
and the remaining registers are set to zero.

EXAMPLE

Type:

        R

DEBUG displays all registers, flags, and the
decoded instruction for the current location.
If the location is CS:11A, then the display
will look similar to this:

```
AX=0E00 BX=00FF CX=0007 DX=01FF SP=039D BP=0000
SI=005C DI=0000 DS=04BA ES=04BA SS=04BA CS=04BA
IP=011A   NV UP DI NG NZ AC PE NC
04BA:011A  CD21            INT      21
```

If you type:

        RF

DEBUG will display the flags:

        NV UP DI NG NZ AC PE NC - _

Now, type any valid flag designation, in any
order, with or without spaces.

For example:

        NV UP DI NG NZ AC PE NC - PLEICY<RETURN>

DEBUG responds only with the DEBUG prompt.   To
see the changes, type either the R or RF
command:

        RF
        NV UP EI PL NZ AC PE CY - _

Press the Return key to leave the flags this
way, or to specify different flag values.

NAME

      Search

PURPOSE

      Searches the <range> specified for the <list>
      of bytes specified.

SYNTAX

      S<range> <list>

COMMENTS

      The <list> may contain one or more bytes, each
      separated by a space or comma. If the <list>
      contains more than one byte, only the first
      address of the byte string is returned. If the
      <list> contains only one byte, all addresses of
      the byte in the <range> are displayed.

EXAMPLE

      If you type:

         SCS:100 110 41

      DEBUG displays a response similar to this:

         04BA:0104
         04BA:010D
         -type:

NAME

Trace

PURPOSE

Executes one instruction and displays the
contents of all registers and flags, and the
decoded instruction.

SYNTAX

T[=<address>][<value>]

COMMENTS

If the optional =<address> is typed, tracing
occurs at the =<address> specified. The
optional <value> causes DEBUG to execute and
trace the number of steps specified by <value>.

The T command uses the hardware trace mode of
the 8086 or 8088 microprocessor. Consequently,
you may also trace instructions stored in ROM
(Read Only Memory).

EXAMPLE

Type:

    T

DEBUG returns a display of the registers,
flags, and decoded instruction for that one
instruction. Assume that the current position
is 04BA:011A; DEBUG might return the display:

AX=0E00 BX=00FF CX=0007 DX=01FF SP=039D BP=0000
SI=005C DI=0000 DS=04BA ES=04BA SS=04BA CS=04BA
IP=011A NV UP DI NG NZ AC PE NC
04BA:011A CD21   INT   21

If you type:

T=011A 10

DEBUG executes sixteen (10 hex) instructions
beginning at 011A in the current segment, and
then displays all registers and flags for each
instruction as it is executed. The display
scrolls away until the last instruction is
executed. Then the display stops, and you can
see the register and flag values for the last
few instructions performed. Remember that
Control-S suspends the display at any point, so
that you can study the registers and flags for
any instruction.

NAME
        Unassemble

PURPOSE
        Disassembles bytes and displays the source
        statements that correspond to them, with
        addresses and byte values.

SYNTAX
        U[<range>]

COMMENTS
        The display of disassembled code looks like a
        listing for an assembled file. If you type the
        U command without parameters, 20 hexadecimal
        bytes are disassembled at the first address
        after that displayed by the previous Unassemble
        command. If you type the U command with the
        <range> parameter, then DEBUG disassembles all
        bytes in the range. If the <range> is given as
        an <address> only, then 20H bytes are
        disassembled.

EXAMPLE
        Type:

            U04BA:100 L10

        DEBUG disassembles 16 bytes beginning at
        address 04BA:0100:

            04BA:0100   206472   AND   [SI+72],AH
            04BA:0103   69   DB   69
            04BA:0104   7665   JBE   016B
            04BA:0106   207370   AND   [BP+DI+70],DH
            04BA:0109   65   DB   65
            04BA:010A   63   DB   63
            04BA:010B   69   DB   69
            04BA:010C   66   DB   66
            04BA:010D   69   DB   69
            04BA:010E   63   DB   63
            04BA:010F   61   DB   61

If you type:

    U04ba:0100 0108

the display shows:

        04BA:0100   206472   AND   [SI+72],AH
        04BA:0103   69   DB   69
        04BA:0104   7665   JBE   016B
        04BA:0106   207370   AND   [BP+DI+70],DH

If the bytes in some addresses are altered, the
disassembler alters the instruction statements.
The U command can be typed for the changed
locations, the new instructions viewed, and the
disassembled code used to edit the source file.

NAME

          Write

PURPOSE

          Writes the file being debugged to a disk file.

SYNTAX

          W[<address>[<drive:> <record> <record>]]

COMMENTS

          If you type W with no parameters, BX:CX must
          already be set to the number of bytes to be
          written; the file is written beginning from
          CS:100. If the W command is typed with just an
          address, then the file is written beginning at
          that address.   If a G or T command has been
          used, BX:CX must be reset before using the
          Write command without parameters. Note that if
          a file is loaded and modified, the name,
          length,   and starting address are all set
          correctly to save the modified file (as long as
          the length has not changed).

          The file must have been named either with the
          DEBUG invocation command or with the N command
          (refer to the Name command earlier in this
          manual).   Both the DEBUG invocation and the N
          command format a filename properly in the
          normal format of a file control block at CS:5C.

          If the W command is typed with parameters, the
          write begins from the memory address specified;
          the file is written to the <drive:> specified
          (the drive designation is numeric here--0=A:,
          1=B:, 2=C:, etc.); DEBUG writes the file
          beginning at   the   logical   record   number
          specified by the first <record>;   DEBUG
          continues to write the file until the number of
          sectors specified in the second <record> have
          been written.

          ┌───┐
          │   **Warning**   │
          │   │
          │   Writing to absolute sectors is EXTREMELY   │
          │   dangerous because the process bypasses the │
          │   file handler.   │
          │   │
          └───┘

EXAMPLE

        Type:

            W

        DEBUG will write the file to disk and then
        display the DEBUG prompt.   Two examples are
        shown below.

            W
            -_

        WCS:100 1 37 2B

        DEBUG writes out the contents of   memory,
        beginning with the address CS:100 to the disk
        in drive B:. The data written out starts in
        disk logical record number 37H and consists of
        2BH records. When the write is complete, DEBUG
        displays the prompt:

            WCS:100 1 37 2B
            -_

8.5 ERROR MESSAGES

During the DEBUG session, you may receive any of the
following error messages. Each error terminates the DEBUG
command under which it occurred, but does not terminate
DEBUG itself.

ERROR CODE   DEFINITION

   BF   Bad flag
                    You attempted to alter a flag, but the
                    characters typed were not one of the
                    acceptable pairs of flag values. See the
                    Register command for the list of
                    acceptable flag entries.

   BP   Too many breakpoints
                    You specified more than ten breakpoints as
                    parameters to the G command. Retype the
                    Go command with ten or fewer breakpoints.

   BR   Bad register
                    You typed the R command with an invalid
                    register name. See the Register command
                    for the list of valid register names.

   DF   Double flag
                    You typed two values for one flag. You
                    may specify a flag value only once per RF
                    command.

Appendix A
Instructions for Users
with Single-drive Systems

APPENDIX A

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USERS WITH SINGLE-DRIVE SYSTEMS

```
                            Note

    Information in this appendix is installation-dependent
    and may not be implemented on every manufacturer's
    machine.
```

If you have only one disk drive, you type MS-DOS commands just as if you had two or more drives on your system.

You should think of your one-drive system as having two drives (drive A and drive B). But instead of A and B representing two physical drives, the A and B represent two physical drives, the A and B represent disks.

If you specify drive B when the "drive A disk" was last used, MS-DOS prompts you to insert the disk for drive B. For example:

```
     A> copy command.com b:
     Insert diskette for drive B:
     and strike any key when ready
       1 File(s) copied
     A>_
```

If you specify drive A when the "drive B disk" was last used, MS-DOS prompts you to change disks again. This time, MS-DOS prompts you to insert the "drive A disk."

Use the same procedure when using a batch file to execute commands. MS-DOS waits for you to insert the appropriate disk and press any key before it continues. You will be prompted to insert a disk.

Important

The letter displayed in the system prompt represents
the default drive where MS-DOS looks to find a file
whose name is entered without a drive name. The
letter in the system prompt does not represent the
last disk used.

For example, assume that A is the default drive. If the
last command performed was:

    dir b:

MS-DOS believes the "drive B disk" is still in the drive.
However, the system prompt is still A>, because A is still
the default drive. If you type:

    dir

MS-DOS prompts you for the "drive A disk" because drive A is
the default drive, and you did not specify another drive in
the Dir command.

Appendix B
Disk and Device Errors

APPENDIX B

DISK AND DEVICE ERRORS

If a disk or device error occurs at any time during a command or program, MS-DOS displays an error message in the following format:

```
<type> <action> drive <x>
Abort,Ignore,Retry:_
```

In this message,<type> may be one of the following:

```
Write protect error
Bad unit error
Not ready error
Bad command error
Data error
Bad call format error
Seek error
Non-DOS disk error
Sector not found error
No paper error
Write fault error
Read fault error
General failure
Sharing violation
Lock violation
Invalid disk change
FCB unavailable
```

The <action> may be either of the following:

```
READING
WRITING
```

The drive indicates the drive in which the error occurred.

MS-DOS waits for you to respond in one of the following ways:

A   Abort. End the program requesting the disk read or write.

I   Ignore. Ignore the bad sector and pretend the error did not occur.

R   Retry. Repeat the operation. This response should be used if you have corrected the error (such as with Not ready or Write protect errors).

Usually, you will want to recover by typing responses in this order:

R   (to try again)
A   (to terminate program and try a new disk)

One other error message might be related to faulty disk read or write:

FILE ALLOCATION TABLE BAD FOR DRIVE x

This message means that the copy in memory of one of the allocation tables has pointers to nonexistent blocks. Possibly the disk was incorrectly formatted or not formatted before use. If this error persists, the disk is currently unusable and must be formatted prior to use.

Appendix C
ANSI Escape Sequences

APPENDIX C

ANSI ESCAPE SEQUENCES

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│                      Note                        │
│                                                  │
│  Information in this appendix is installation-dependent │
│  and may not be implemented on every manufacturer's │
│  machine.                                        │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

An ANSI escape sequence is a series of characters (beginning
with an escape character or keystroke) that you can use to
define functions to MS-DOS. Specifically, you can reassign
keys, change graphics functions, and affect cursor movement.

This appendix explains how the ANSI escape sequences are
defined for MS-DOS. Examples of how to use ANSI escape
sequences are included at the end of this appendix.

NOTES:

1. MS-DOS uses a default value when you do not specify
    a value or when you specify zero.

2. Pn represents "numeric parameter." This is a
    decimal number specified with ASCII digits.

3. Ps represents "selective parameter." This is any
    decimal number that is used to select a
    subfunction. Multiple subfunctions may be selected
    by separating the parameters with semicolons.

4. Pl represents "line parameter." This is a decimal
    number specified with ASCII digits.

5. Pc represents "column parameter." This is a decimal
    number specified with ASCII digits.

C.1 CURSOR FUNCTIONS

The following escape sequences affect the cursor position on the screen.

CUP - Cursor Position

    ESC [Pl ; Pc H

HVP - Horizontal & Vertical Position

    ESC [Pl ; Pc f

CUP and HVP move the cursor to the position specified by the parameters. The first parameter specifies the line number, and the second parameter specifies the column number. The default value is 1. When no parameters are specified, the cursor moves to the home position.

CUU - Cursor Up

    ESC [Pn A

This sequence moves the cursor up one line without changing columns.   The value of Pn sets the number of lines moved. The default value for Pn is 1.   MS-DOS ignores   the CUU sequence if the cursor is already on the top line.

CUD - Cursor Down

    ESC [Pn B

This sequence moves the cursor down one line without changing columns. The value of Pn sets the number of lines moved. The default value for Pn is 1. MS-DOS ignores the CUD sequence if the cursor is already on the bottom line.

CUF - Cursor Forward

    ESC [Pn C

The CUF sequence moves the cursor forward one column without changing lines. The value of Pn sets the number of columns moved. The default value for Pn is 1. MS-DOS ignores the CUF sequence if the cursor is already in the far right column.

CUB - Cursor Backward

    ESC [Pn D

This escape sequence moves the cursor back one column without changing lines. The value of Pn sets the number of columns moved. The default value for Pn is 1. MS-DOS ignores the CUB sequence if the cursor is already in the far left column.

DSR - Device Status Report

    ESC [6 n

The console driver will output a CPR sequence (see below) on receipt of the DSR escape sequence.

CPR - Cursor Position Report (from console driver to system)

    ESC [Pn ; Pn R

The CPR sequence reports current cursor position using standard input. The first parameter specifies the current line and the second parameter specifies the current column.

SCP - Save Cursor Position

    ESC [s

The current cursor position is saved. This cursor position can be restored with the RCP sequence (see below).

RCP - Restore Cursor Position

    ESC [u

This sequence restores the cursor position to the value it had when the console driver received the SCP sequence.

C.2 ERASING

The following escape sequences affect erase functions.

ED - Erase Display

     ESC [2 J

The ED sequence erases the screen, and the cursor goes to
the home position.

EL - Erase Line

     ESC [K

This sequence erases from the cursor to the end of the line
(including the cursor position).

C.3 MODES OF OPERATION

The following escape sequences affect screen graphics.

SGR - Set Graphics Rendition

     ESC [Ps ; ... ; Ps m

The SGR escape sequence calls the graphic functions
specified by the parameters described below. The graphic
functions remain until the next occurrence of an SGR escape
sequence.

Parameter	Parameter Function	
0	All Attributes off	
1	Bold on	
2	Faint on	
3	Italic on	
5	Blink on	
6	Rapid blink on	
7	Reverse Video on	
8	Concealed on	(ISO 6429 standard)
30	Black foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)
31	Red foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)
32	Green foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)
33	Yellow foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)
34	Blue foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)
35	Magenta foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)
36	Cyan foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)

37	White foreground	(ISO 6429 standard)
40	Black background	(ISO 6429 standard)
41	Red background	(ISO 6429 standard)
42	Green background	(ISO 6429 standard)
43	Yellow background	(ISO 6429 standard)
44	Blue background	(ISO 6429 standard)
45	Magenta background	(ISO 6429 standard)
46	Cyan background	(ISO 6429 standard)
47	White background	(ISO 6429 standard)
48	Subscript	
49	Superscript	

SM - Set Mode

```
     ESC [ = Ps h
or   ESC [ = h
or   ESC [ = 0 h
or   ESC [ ? 7 h
```

The SM escape sequence changes the screen width or type to one of the following:

Parameter	Parameter Function
0	40 x 25 black and white
1	40 x 25 color
2	80 x 25 black and white
3	80 x 25 color
4	320 x 200 color
5	320 x 200 black and white
6	640 x 200 black and white
7	wrap at end of line

RM - Reset Mode

```
     ESC [ = Ps l
or   ESC [ = l
or   ESC [ = 0 l
or   ESC [ ? 7 l
```

Parameters for RM are the same as for SM (Set Mode), except that parameter 7 resets the wrap at the end of line mode.

C.4 KEYBOARD REASSIGNMENT

Although not part of the ANSI 3.64-1979 or ISO 6429
standard, the following keyboard reassignments are
compatible with these standards.

The control sequence is:

```
      ESC [ Pn ; Pn ; ... Pn p
or    ESC [ "string" ; p
or    ESC [ Pn ; "string" ; Pn ; Pn ; "string" ; Pn p
or    any other combination of strings and decimal numbers
```

The final code in the control sequence (p) is one reserved
for private use by the ANSI 3.64-1979 standard.

The first ASCII code in the control sequence defines which
code is being mapped. The remaining numbers define the
sequence of ASCII codes generated when this key is
intercepted. Note that there is one exception: if the
first code in the sequence is zero (NUL), then the first and
second code make up an extended ASCII redefinition.

Examples:

   1. Reassign the Q and q key to the A and a key (and
      vice versa):

```
         ESC [ 6 5 ; 8 1 p        A becomes Q
         ESC [ 9 7 ; 1 1 3 p      a becomes q
         ESC [ 8 1 ; 6 5 p        Q becomes A
         ESC [ 1 1 3 ; 9 7 p      q becomes a
```

   2. Reassign the F10 key to a Dir command followed by a
      carriage return:

```
         ESC [ 0 ; 6 8 ; " d i r " ; 1 3 p
```

      The 0;68 is the extended ASCII code for the F10
      key; 13 decimal is a carriage return.

Appendix D
How to Configure Your System

APPENDIX D

HOW TO CONFIGURE YOUR SYSTEM

D.1   WHAT IS A CONFIGURATION FILE?

In many cases, there are installation-specific settings for MS-DOS that need to be configured at system startup. An example of this is a standard device driver, such as an online printer.

The configuration file, named CONFIG.SYS, is simply a file that has certain commands for MS-DOS at startup. Each time you start MS-DOS, MS-DOS searches the root directory of the drive it was started from for a file named CONFIG.SYS. The CONFIG.SYS file allows you to configure your system with a minimum of effort. For example, you can add device drivers to your system at startup by a simple command in the CONFIG.SYS file.

D.2   CHANGING THE CONFIG.SYS FILE

If there is not a CONFIG.SYS file on the MS-DOS disk, you can use the MS-DOS editor, EDLIN, to create a file; then save it on the MS-DOS disk in your root directory.

D.3   CONFIG.SYS COMMANDS

The following commands are used in the CONFIG.SYS file:

Break   Sets Control-C check.

Buffers   Sets the number of sector buffers.

Country   Allows for international time, date and currency.

Device   Installs the device driver into the system.

Drivparm   Defines parameters for block devices.

FCBS   Specifies the number of FCBs that can be
             concurrently open.

Files   Sets the number of open files that can access
             certain MS-DOS system calls.

Lastdrive   Sets the maximum number of drives that you may
             access.

Shell   Begins execution of the shell from a specific
             file.

These commands are described in detail on the following
pages. For a sample CONFIG.SYS file, see Section D.4 at the
end of this appendix.

NAME

>Break

PURPOSE

>Sets Control-C check.

SYNTAX

>break=[ON]

>>or

>break=[OFF]

COMMENTS

>Depending on the program you are running, Control-C
>may be used to stop an activity (for example, to
>stop sorting a file). Normally, MS-DOS checks to
>see if Control-C has been typed while it is reading
>from the keyboard, writing to the screen, or to a
>printer. Setting Break to "on" allows Control-C
>checking to be extended to other functions such as
>disk reads and writes.

EXAMPLE

>break=off

NAME

Buffers

PURPOSE

Allows you to set the number of disk buffers that
MS-DOS allocates in memory at the time you start the
system.

SYNTAX

buffers=<x>

COMMENTS

A disk buffer is a block of memory where MS-DOS can
hold data being read from or written to a disk when
the amount of data is not an exact multiple of
sector size.

The default number of buffers is 2. For
applications such as word processors, a number
between 10 and 20 will provide the best performance.
If you plan to create a lot of subdirectories,
increase the buffers value to between 20 and 30.

EXAMPLE

buffers=10

NAME

    Country

PURPOSE

    This number allows MS-DOS to use international time,
    date, currency, and case conversion.

SYNTAX

    country=<x>

COMMENTS

    The default and allowed country values are set by
    the equipment manufacturer.   The following table
    shows the possible values for <x>:

Value	Country
001	United States
031	Netherlands
032	Belgium
033	France
034	Spain
039	Italy
041	Switzerland
044	United Kingdom
045	Denmark
046	Sweden
047	Norway
049	Germany
061	Australia
358	Finland
972	Israel

EXAMPLE

    country=033

    This example sets international currency, time,
    date, and case conversion to French (France).

NAME
        Device

PURPOSE
        This command installs the device driver in the
        specified pathname to the system list.

SYNTAX
        device=[<drive:>]<pathname>

COMMENTS
        If you plan to use the ANSI escape sequences
        described in Appendix C, you should create a
        CONFIG.SYS file with the following command:

                device=ansi.sys

        This command causes MS-DOS to replace all keyboard
        input and screen output support with the ANSI escape
        sequences.

        The standard installable device drivers provided
        with MS-DOS are ANSI.SYS, DRIVER.SYS, and
        RAMDRIVE.SYS. For more information on ANSI.SYS,
        refer to Appendix C. For more information on
        DRIVER.SYS and RAMDRIVE.SYS, refer to Appendix G,
        "Installable Device Drivers."

NAME
        Drivparm

PURPOSE
        This command allows you to define parameters for
        block devices when you start MS-DOS, overriding the
        original MS-DOS device driver settings.

SYNTAX
        drivparm=/d:<dd> [/c] [/f:<ff>]   [/h:<hh>]   [/n]
        [/s:<sss>] [/t<ttt>]

COMMENTS
        Setting Drivparm overrides any previous block device
        driver definitions.

        The <dd> parameter on the /d switch specifies a
        logical drive number between 0 and 255. This means
        that drive number 0=A, 1=B, 2=C, etc.

        The /c switch specifies that changeline (doorlock)
        support is required.

        The <ff> option on the /f switch specifies the form
        factor index where:

            0 = 320/360 KB
            1 = 1.2 MB
            2 = 720 KB
            3 = 8" single density
            4 = 8" double density
            5 = Hard disk
            6 = Tape drive
            7 = Other

        If you do not specify the /f switch, Drivparm uses a
        default of 720KB.

        The <hh> option on the /h switch specifies the
        maximum head number. Its value can range from 1 to
        99.

        The /n switch specifies a non-removable block
        device.

        The <ss> option on the /s switch specifies the
        number of sectors per track. Its value can range
        from 1 to 99.

        The <ttt> option on the /t switch specifies the
        number of tracks per side on the block device. Its
        value can range from 1 to 999.

EXAMPLE

You might have a computer with an internal tape
drive unit on drive D: that is configured at boot
time to write 20 tracks of 40 sectors per track. If
you want to reconfigure this tape drive to write 10
tracks of 99 sectors each, you can put the following
line in your CONFIG.SYS file:

drivparm=/d:3 /f:6 /h:1 /s:99 /t:10

This overrides the default device driver settings,
and supports a tape drive as drive D (in this case
the logical and physical drive numbers are
identical). This tape drive has 1 head, and
supports a tape format of 10 tracks and 99 sectors
per track. (This assumes that the device driver for
the tape device supports this configuration of
tracks and sectors.) You might want to use this
method to create a tape that you can read on another
computer that can only read this alternate format.

NAME

FCBS

PURPOSE

This command allows you to determine the number of
FCBs (File Control Blocks) that can be concurrently
open.

SYNTAX

fcbs=<x>,<y>

COMMENTS

<x> represents the number of files opened by File
Control Blocks that can be open at any one time.
The default value for <x> is 4. Allowed values are
from 1 to 255.

<y> specifies the number of files opened by FCBs
that MS-DOS cannot close automatically if an
application tries to open more than <x> files by
FCBs. The first <y> files opened by FCBs are
protected from being closed. The default value is
0. Allowed values are from 1 to 255.

EXAMPLE

fcb=4,2

NAME
        Files

PURPOSE
        This command sets the number of open file handles
        compatible with XENIX(R) that the MS-DOS system
        calls can access.

SYNTAX
        files=<x>

COMMENTS
        <x> represents the number of open file handles that
        the system calls can access.   System calls 2FH
        through 60H are compatible with the XENIX operating
        system.

        <x> can be any number between 8 and 255.   The
        default value is 8. Any value higher than 20 serves
        no function.

EXAMPLE
        files=20

NAME

Lastdrive

PURPOSE

This command sets the maximum number of drives that
you may access.

SYNTAX

lastdrive=<x>

COMMENTS

<x> can be any letter from A to Z.

This value represents the last valid drive that
MS-DOS will accept.   The default value is E.   The
minumum number is equal to the number of drives you
have installed on your computer.

This command is only useful in a network
environment.   At startup, MS-DOS recognizes five
drive letters: A-E, no matter how many physical
drives you have on your system.   A network
redirection must occur to make any of the extra
drives defined by Lastdrive valid.

You should note that MS-DOS allocates a data
structure for each drive that you specify, so you
shouldn't specify more drives than necessary.

EXAMPLE

lastdrive=m

This sets the last drive to drive "M" unless you
have added an external logical device with
DRIVER.SYS. See Appendix G, "Installable Device
Drivers," for more information on DRIVER.SYS.

NAME

Shell

PURPOSE

This command begins execution of the shell (top-level command processor) from a file defined by the specified pathname.

SYNTAX

shell=[<drive:>]<pathname>

COMMENTS

This command should be used by system programmers who write their own command processor (the MS-DOS file named COMMAND.COM). MS-DOS will start the processor specified in <pathname> instead of reading the standard COMMAND.COM.

EXAMPLE

shell=\bin\command.com /e:3000 a:\bin /p

This example uses the COMMAND.COM shell in the \BIN directory with an environment size of 3000 bytes.

D.4   SAMPLE CONFIG.SYS FILE

A typical configuration file might look like this:

```
buffers=10
files=10
device=\bin\network.sys
break=on
shell=a:\bin\command.com /e:3000 a:\bin /p
lastdrive=e
```

Note that the Buffers and Files commands are set to 10. MS-DOS will search for the pathname \BIN\NETWORK.SYS to find the device that is being added to the system. This file is usually supplied on disk with your device. Make sure that you save the device file in the pathname that you specify in the Device command.

This file also sets the MS-DOS command EXEC to the COMMAND.COM file located on disk in drive A in the \BIN directory. The /e switch sets the size of the environment to 3000 bytes. The A:\BIN tells COMMAND.COM where to look for itself when it needs to reread from disk. The /p switch tells COMMAND.COM that it is the first program running on the system so that it can process the MS-DOS Exit command. (Refer to Command in Chapter 3, "MS-DOS Commands," for more information on the command processor.)

The last logical drive on the system is drive E unless you have added an external logical device with DRIVER.SYS. See Appendix G, "Installable Device Drivers," for more information on DRIVER.SYS.

Appendix E
MS-DOS Message Directory

MS-DOS MESSAGE DIRECTORY

Abort edit (Y/N)?
[EDLIN]

>MS-DOS displays this message when you choose the Quit (Q) command in EDLIN. The Quit command exits the editing session <u>without</u> saving any editing changes. Specify Y (<u>for Yes</u>) or N (for No).

Abort, Retry, Ignore?
[MS-DOS]

>If a disk or device error occurs at any time during a command or program, MS-DOS returns this message and asks you to abort the command or program, retry it, or ignore the error.

Access denied
[Replace][Xcopy]

>You tried to replace a write-protected, read-only, or locked file.

All files cancelled by operator
[Print]

>MS-DOS displays this message when you specify the /t switch with the Print command.

All specified files are contiguous
[Chkdsk]

>All files are allocated contiguously on the disk without fragmentation.

Allocation error in file, size adjusted
[Chkdsk]
          The size of the file indicated in the directory
          was not consistent with the amount of data
          actually allocated to the file.

Are you sure (Y,N)?
[MS-DOS]
          MS-DOS displays this message if you try to delete
          . (all files in the working directory). Specify
          Y (for Yes) or N (for No).

Attempted write-protect violation
[Format]
          The disk you are trying to format is write
          protected.

Bad call format reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Bad call format writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Bad command error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Bad command error writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Bad command or file name
[MS-DOS]
          The command cannot find the program you asked it
          to run. You either mistyped the filename, or the
          file does not exist on the disk.

Bad or missing (filename)
[MS-DOS]
          You specified an invalid device in the CONFIG.SYS
          file. Check the accuracy of the Device command in
          the CONFIG.SYS file.

Bad or missing Command Interpreter
[MS-DOS]

MS-DOS cannot find the COMMAND.COM file on the disk; either the file is missing from the root directory, or the file is invalid. Either restart the system or copy the COMMAND.COM file from your backup MS-DOS master disk onto the disk used to start MS-DOS. You will also receive this message if COMMAND.COM has been moved from the directory it was originally in when you started MS-DOS.

Bad Partition Table
[Format]

This message means that there is no DOS partition on the hard disk. You must run Fdisk to create a DOS partition on your hard disk.

Bad unit error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]

Device error. See Appendix B.

BREAK is off (or on)
[MS-DOS]

This message tells you the current setting of Break.

Cannot CHDIR to (filename) -
tree past this point not processed
[Chkdsk]

Chkdsk is traveling the tree structure of the directory and is unable to go to the specified directory. All subdirectories underneath this directory will not be verified.

Cannot CHDIR to root
Processing cannot continue
[Chkdsk]

Chkdsk is traveling the tree structure of the directory and is unable to return to the root directory. Chkdsk is not able to continue checking the remaining subdirectories to the root.

Cannot CHKDSK a Network driv.
[Chkdsk]

You cannot check drives that are redirected over the network.

Cannot CHKDSK a SUBSTed or ASSIGNed drive
[Chkdsk]
          You cannot check drives that have been substituted
          or assigned.

Cannot DISKCOMP to or from
a network drive
[Diskcomp]
          You cannot compare disks on drives that have been
          redirected over the network.

Cannot DISKCOMP to or from
an ASSIGNed or SUBSTed drive
[Diskcomp]
          One of the drives that you specified is a drive
          that you created using the ASSIGN or SUBST
          command.

Cannot DISKCOPY to or from
a network drive
[Diskcopy]
          You cannot copy disks to or from drives that have
          been redirected over the network.

Cannot do binary reads from a device
[Copy]
          This   message   appears   during   Copy   command
          processing.   The Copy cannot be done in binary
          mode when you are copying from a device.   Do not
          use the /b switch, or else specify an ASCII copy
          with the /a switch.

Cannot edit .BAK file --rename file
[EDLIN]
          You attempted to edit a backup copy created by
          EDLIN.   Either rename the file or copy the .BAK
          file and give it a different extension.

Cannot format an ASSIGNed or SUBSTed drive
[Format]
          You attempted to format a drive which is actually
          mapped to another drive by the Assign or Subst
          command. Run Assign or Subst again and clear all
          drive assignments.

Cannot FORMAT a Network drive
[Format]
        You cannot format drives that are redirected over
        the Network.

Cannot label a network drive
[Label]
        You cannot label a drive that is shared on a
        network server station.

Cannot LABEL a SUBSTed or ASSIGNed drive
[Label]
        You cannot label a drive if has been substituted
        with the SUBST command or assigned with the ASSIGN
        command.

Cannot open (filename)
[Print]
        Either MS-DOS cannot find the specified file to
        print or the file does not exist. Check the
        command for a valid filename.

Cannot perform a cyclic copy
[Xcopy]
        When you are using the /s switch, you may not
        specify a target that is a subdirectory of the
        source.

Cannot recover . entry, processing continued
[Chkdsk]
        The "." entry (working directory) is defective.

Cannot Recover a Network drive
[Recover]
        You cannot recover files on drives that are
        redirected over the Network.

Cannot recover .. entry
[Chkdsk]
        The ".." entry (parent directory) is defective.

Cannot SUBST a network drive
[Subst]
        You cannot substitute drives that are redirected
        over the network.

Cannot SYS to a Network drive
[Sys]
            You cannot transfer the system files to drives
            that are redirected over the network.

Cannot use PRINT - Use NET PRINT
[Print]
            You must use the Net Print command to print files.

Cannot XCOPY to a reserved device
[Xcopy]
            You cannot copy files to a device.

Cannot XCOPY from a reserved device
[Xcopy]
            You cannot copy from a device to a file.

CHDIR .. failed, trying alternate method
[Chkdsk]
            In traveling the tree structure, Chkdsk was not
            able to return to a parent directory. It will try
            to return to that directory by starting over at
            the root and traveling down.

Compare another diskette (Y/N)?
[Diskcomp]
            Diskcomp displays this message when it has
            completed its comparison of the disks. Press Y if
            you want to compare more disks.

Compare error on
side (NNN), track (nnn)
[Diskcomp]
            Diskcomp found an error on side NNN, track nnn.

Compare OK
[Diskcomp]
            Diskcomp displays this message if the disks are
            identical.

Compare process ended
[Diskcomp]
            Diskcomp displays this message if a fatal error
            occured during the comparison.

Comparing (tt) tracks
(xx) sectors per track, (y) side(s)
[Diskcomp]
          This message confirms the format of the disks that
          you are comparing.

COM port does not exist
[Mode]
          You have specified an invalid COM port.

Content of destination lost before copy
[MS-DOS]
          A file to be used as a source file to the Copy
          command has been overwritten prior to completion
          of the copy. Example:

               copy a + b b

          which destroys B before it can be copied.

Convert lost chains to files (Y/N)?
[Chkdsk]
          If you respond Y to this prompt, Chkdsk will
          recover the lost blocks it found when checking the
          disk. Chkdsk will create a directory entry and a
          file for you with the filename FILEnnnn.CHK. If
          you respond N, Chkdsk frees the lost blocks so
          they can be reallocated.

Copy complete
Copy another (Y/N)?
[Diskcopy]
          Diskcopy has completed processing. Respond Y if
          you wish to copy another disk. Respond N if you
          do not wish to copy another disk.

Copy not completed
[Diskcopy]
          Diskcopy could not copy the entire disk.

Copying...
[Diskcopy]
          This message indicates that Diskcopy is copying a
          disk.

Copyright 1981,82,83,84,85,86 Microsoft Corp.
[MS-DOS]
          This message appears on most MS-DOS utility and
          command banners.

Corrections will not be written to disk
[Chkdsk]
          There are errors on the disk, but you did not
          specify the /f switch.

Current date is (mm-dd-yy)
[MS-DOS]
          This message is displayed in response to the Date
          command.

Current time is (hh:mm:ss.hh)
[MS-DOS]
          This message is displayed in response to the Time
          command.

Data error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Delete current volume label (Y/N)?
[Label]
          If a current volume label exists, Label displays
          this message when you press the Return key in
          response to the prompt to enter the new volume
          label for this disk. If you want to delete the
          volume label, press Y (for Yes) otherwise, press N
          (for No).

DEVICE Support Not Present
[Diskcomp]
          The disk drive does not support MS-DOS 3.2 device
          control.

Directory is joined
[Chkdsk]
          Chkdsk does not process directories which are
          joined.

Directory not empty
[Join]
          You can only join onto a directory which is empty.

Directory is totally empty,
no . or ..
[Chkdsk]
          The specified directory does not contain
          references to working and parent directories.
          Delete the specified directory and recreate it.

Disk error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Disk error reading FAT (x)
[Chkdsk]
          One of your File Allocation Tables has a defective
          sector in it. MS-DOS automatically uses the other
          FAT. It is a good idea to copy all your files
          onto another disk.

Disk error writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Disk error writing FAT (x:)
[Chkdsk]
          One of your File Allocation Tables has a defective
          sector in it. MS-DOS will automatically use the
          other FAT. It is a good idea to copy all your
          files onto another disk.

Diskettes compare OK
[Diskcomp]
          The disks that you are comparing are identical.

Disk full. Edits lost
[EDLIN]
          EDLIN was not able to save your file due to lack
          of disk space.

Disk full--write not completed
[EDLIN]
          You gave the End (E) command, but the disk did not
          contain enough free space for the file. EDLIN
          aborted the End command and returned you to the
          operating system. Part of the file may have been
          written to disk and saved.   Delete the saved
          portion and restart the editing session. The file
          will not be available after this error.

Disks must be the same size
[Diskcopy]
            You cannot copy the contents of a disk with a
            different format using Diskcopy. Use the Copy
            command to copy files onto the disk.

Disk unsuitable for system disk
[Format]
            The Format program detected a bad track on the
            disk where system files should reside. You should
            use this disk to store data only.

Divide error
[Attrib]
            The 8086 has set the divide overflow flag. This
            is usually caused by a program attempting to
            divide by zero.

Divide overflow
[MS-DOS]
            The 8086 has set the divide overflow flag. This
            is usually caused by a program attempting to
            divide by zero.

Does (name) specify a file name
or directory name on the target
(F = file D = directory)?
[Xcopy]
            Xcopy displays this prompt if the target directory
            does not exist.

Do not specify filename(s)
Command format: DISKCOMP d: d:[/1][/8]
[Diskcomp]
            You specified an incorrect switch or gave a
            filename in addition to a drive name.

Do you see the leftmost 0? (Y/N)
[Mode]
            Mode displays this message to help you align the
            test pattern on your screen.

Do you see the rightmost 9? (Y/N)
[Mode]
            Mode displays this message to help you align the
            test pattern on your screen.

Drive letter must be specified
[Format]
          You must specify the drive that you want to
          format.

Drive types or diskette types
not compatible
[Diskcomp]
          You cannot compare a single-sided disk with a
          double-sided disk, or a high-density disk with a
          low-density disk. You should use FC   to compare
          the files on the disks.

Duplicate file name or File not found
[Chkdsk][MS-DOS]
          You tried to rename a file to a filename that
          already exists or the name you specified could not
          be found.

ECHO is off (or on)
[MS-DOS]
          This message tells you the current status of Echo.

End of input file
[EDLIN]
          The entire file was read into memory. If the file
          is read in sections, this message indicates the
          last section of the file is in memory.

Enter current Volume Label for drive (x:)
[Format]
          Format asks you to enter the current volume label
          for verification before it formats the hard disk
          in the specified drive.

Enter new date:
[MS-DOS]
          You must respond to this prompt when you start
          MS-DOS. Enter the date in a mm/dd/yy format.

Enter new time:
[MS-DOS]
          You must respond to this prompt when you start
          MS-DOS. Enter the time in the hh:mm format.

Entry error
[EDLIN]

> The last command you typed contained a syntax
> error. Retype the command with the correct syntax
> and press the Return key.

Entry has a bad attribute (or link or size)
[Chkdsk]

> This message may be preceded by one or two periods
> which indicate which subdirectory is invalid. If
> you have specified the /f switch, Chkdsk tries to
> correct the error.

Error in .EXE file
[MS-DOS]

> The .EXE file you have asked MS-DOS to load has an
> invalid internal format.

Error reading/writing partition table
[Format]

> Format could not read or write the partition
> table. You should run Fdisk on the disk and then
> try formatting it again.

Errors found, F parameter not specified
Corrections will not be written to disk
[Chkdsk]

> Chkdsk found errors on the disk. If you have not
> specified the /f switch, Chkdsk continues printing
> messages but will not correct the errors.

Errors on list device indicate that it
may be off-line. Please check it.
[Print]

> Your printer is not turned on.

Error writing to device
[MS-DOS]

> You tried to send too much data to a device.
> MS-DOS was unable to write the data to the
> specified device.

EXEC failure
[MS-DOS]

> MS-DOS either found an error when reading a
> command or the Files command in the CONFIG.SYS
> file is set too low. Increase the value and
> restart MS-DOS.

FCB unavailable reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

FCB unavailable writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

fc: cannot open (filename) - No such file or directory
[FC]
          One of the files that you specified doesn't exist.
          Check the directory for the correct filename.

fc: (filename) longer than (filename)
[FC]
          After reaching the end of one of the files in a
          file   comparison,   the   other file still has
          uncompared data left.

fc: incompatible switches
[FC]
          You   have   specified   switches   that   are not
          compatible.   (For example, /b and /L.) You should
          not combine binary and ASCII comparison switches.

fc: out of memory
[FC]
          You do not have enough memory to perform the
          comparison.

fc: no differences encountered
[FC]
          The files are the same.

File allocation table bad
[MS-DOS]
          The disk may be defective. Run Chkdsk with /f to
          fix the disk.

File allocation table bad drive (x:)
[Chkdsk][Print]
          The disk may be defective. Run Chkdsk with /f to
          fix the disk.

File cannot be copied onto itself
[Copy] [Replace] [Xcopy]
          The source filename you specified is the same as
          the target filename.

File cannot be converted
[Exe2bin]
          The input file is not in the correct format.

File creation error
[MS-DOS] [Xcopy]
          You tried to add a new filename or replace a file
          that already exists in the directory. If the file
          already exists, it is a read-only file and cannot
          be replaced. Run Chkdsk on the disk to determine
          the cause of the error.

File is READ-ONLY
[EDLIN]
          You may not change this file because the file is
          designated read-only.

Filename must be specified
[EDLIN]
          You did not specify a filename when you started
          EDLIN.

File not found
[EDLIN] [MS-DOS] [Print] [Recover]
          MS-DOS cannot find the file that you specified.
          Check to see that the pathname is accurate and
          that the file exists in the directory you
          specified.

FIND: Access denied
[Find]
          You cannot access the file. Make sure that the
          disk is not write-protected.

FIND: File not found
[Find]
          You specified a file that doesn't exist.   Make
          sure you have typed the filename correctly.

FIND: Invalid number of parameters
[Find]
             You specified too many, or not enough options in
             the command line.

FIND: Invalid Parameter
[Find]
             One of the switches that you have specified is
             wrong.

FIND: Read error in (filename)
[Find]
             The program could not read the specified file.

FIND: Syntax error
[Find]
             Check to make sure that you have typed the command
             correctly.

First cluster number is invalid, entry truncated
[Chkdsk]
             The   file directory entry contains an invalid
             pointer to the data area. If you specified the /f
             switch, the file is truncated to a zero-length
             file.

FIRST diskette bad or incompatible
[Diskcomp]
             Diskcomp cannot recognize the format on the source
             disk.   You should run Chkdsk to help you identify
             the problem.

Fixups needed - base segment (hex:)
[Exe2bin]
             The   source   (.EXE) file contained information
             indicating that a load segment is required for the
             file. Specify the absolute segment address where
             the finished module is to be located.

For cannot be nested
[MS-DOS]
             Nesting of For commands is not allowed in a batch
             file.

Format another (Y/N)?
[Format]
Type Y (for Yes) to format another disk.   Type N
(for No) if you do not want to format another
disk. If you accidentally type Y, you can abort
the format process by typing Control-C in response
to the "Strike any key to begin formatting"
message.

Format complete
[Format]
Format displays this message when it has finished
formatting the disk in the specified drive.

Format failure
[Format]
MS-DOS could not format the disk. This message is
usually displayed with an explanation as to why
MS-DOS could not format the disk.

Format not supported on drive (x:)
[Format]
You cannot use Format to format this drive.

General failure reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
Device error. See Appendix B.

General failure writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
Device error. See Appendix B.

Graphics characters loaded
[Graftabl]
The Graftabl command displays this message after
it loads the table of graphics characters into
memory.

Graphics characters already loaded
[Graftabl]
The Graftabl command displays this message if you
have already loaded the table of graphics
characters into memory.

Head: (hh) Cylinder: (cc)
[Format]
          Format displays the head and cylinder   number   of
          the track currently being formatted.

Illegal device name
[Mode]
          Your computer does not recognize this device name.

Incompatible system size
[Sys]
          The system files IO.SYS and MS-DOS.SYS occupy more
          space on the source disk than is available on the
          destination disk.

Incorrect DOS version
[Attrib][Chkdsk][Diskcomp][Diskcopy][EDLIN]
[Format][Graftabl][Mode][More][Print][Recover]
[Redir][Share][Subst][Sys][Tree][Xcopy]
          Many version 2.x and 3.x utilities will not run on
          earlier versions of MS-DOS. Some utilities will
          only run under the exact version of MS-DOS for
          which they were configured.

Incorrect number of parameters
[Join][Subst]
          You specified too many or too few options in the
          command line.

Incorrect parameter
[Assign][Redir][Share]
          One of the options you specified is wrong.

Infinite retry on parallel printer timeout
[Mode]
          Your printer is probably off-line or not ready.
          If the printer appears to be ready, you should
          press the Control-Alt-Del keys to reset   the
          computer.

Insert destination disk in drive (x:)
and strike any key when ready
[Sys]
          This message appears when you are using Sys to
          transfer the operating system with a single disk
          drive. You should insert a disk in the
          appropriate drive and press any character or
          number key to begin processing.

Insert diskette for drive (x:)
and strike any key when ready
[MS-DOS]
          This message appears when MS-DOS is copying files.
          You should insert a disk in the appropriate drive
          and press any character or number key to begin
          processing.

Insert diskette with batch file
and press any key when ready
[MS-DOS]
          The disk containing the batch file you specified
          is not in the drive you originally specified.
          Reinsert the disk that contains the batch file in
          the appropriate drive.

Insert DOS disk in drive (x:)
and strike ENTER when ready.
[Format]
          You have specified Format /s but the disk in the
          default drive does not contain MS-DOS system
          files.   Insert a system disk in the · drive
          specified, and press the Return key.

Insert FIRST diskette in drive (x:)
[Diskcomp]
          Diskcomp displays this message to prompt you to
          insert the first disk into the specified drive.

Insert new diskette for drive (x:)
and strike ENTER when ready
[Format]
          This message appears when you are using a single
          drive to format a disk. You should insert a disk
          in the appropriate drive and press the Return key
          to begin formatting. If there is any data on the
          disk, Format will destroy it.

Insert SECOND diskette in drive (x:)
[Diskcomp]
          Diskcomp displays this message to prompt you to
          insert the second disk that you want to compare
          into the specified drive.

Insert source diskette into drive (x:)
[Diskcopy]
          Insert the disk to be copied into the specified
          drive.

Insert system diskette in drive (x:)
and strike any key when ready
[Sys]
          Sys needs a disk from which to read the IO.SYS and
          MS-DOS.SYS files. Insert a disk with the IO.SYS
          and MS-DOS.SYS files into the specified drive and
          press any character or number key to start the
          system copy process.

Insert target diskette into drive (x:)
[Diskcopy]
          You are running Diskcopy and your source and
          destination drives are the same. Reinsert the
          destination disk into the specified drive.

Insufficient disk space
[MS-DOS][Replace]
          The disk is full. It does not contain enough room
          to perform the specified operation.

Insufficient memory
[Chkdsk][Diskcomp][EDLIN][Replace]
          There is not enough memory to   perform   the
          specified operation.

Insufficient memory for system transfer
[Format]
          Your memory· configuration is insufficient   to
          transfer   the MS-DOS system files IO.SYS and
          MS-DOS.SYS with the /s switch.

Insufficient room in root directory.
Erase files in root and repeat CHKDSK
[Chkdsk]
          Chkdsk always recovers lost files into the root
          directory.   In this case, your root directory is
          full. .Delete some files in your root directory to
          make room for the lost files.

Intermediate file error during pipe
[MS-DOS]
          The pipe operation makes use of temporary files on
          the disk which will automatically be deleted after
          the piping process is complete. An error has
          occurred in one of these files.

Invalid baud rate specified
[Mode]
          You have specified an incorrect baud rate. Valid
          choices are 110, 150, 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800,
          and 9600. You must specify at least the first two
          digits of the baud rate.

Invalid characters in volume label
[Format][Label]
          The volume label should contain only up to 11
          alphanumeric characters.

Invalid COMMAND.COM
Insert COMMAND.COM disk in default drive
and strike any key when ready
[MS-DOS]
          The program you have just run used up almost all
          of memory. MS-DOS must now reload the COMMAND.COM
          file from disk. However, MS-DOS cannot find
          COMMAND.COM on the disk or the copy found is
          invalid. Insert a disk into the ' default drive
          which contains a copy of COMMAND.COM similar to
          the version on the disk with which you started
          MS-DOS.

Invalid country code
[MS-DOS]
          You have specified a country number in your
          CONFIG.SYS file which is not in the table of files
          configured in this implementation of   MS-DOS.
          Country codes must be in the range 1-99 and are
          set by your computer manufacturer.

Invalid date
[Backup][Date][Restore][Xcopy]
          You specified the date incorrectly.   Refer to
          Chapter 3 for the correct syntax and try the
          command again.

Invalid device
[MS-DOS]
          The device specified was not CON, NUL, AUX, or
          PRN.

Invalid device parameters from device driver
[Format]
          Format displays this message when the number of
          hidden sectors is not evenly divisible by the
          number of sectors per track (i.e., the partition

does   not   start on a track boundary).   This might
happen if you tried to format a   hard   disk   that
previously   had   been   formatted   with   MS-DOS 2.x
without first running Fdisk.

Invalid directory
[MS-DOS]
        The directory you specified either does not exist
        or   is invalid. Check to see that you entered the
        directory name correctly.

Invalid disk change reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
        Device error. See Appendix B.

Invalid disk change writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
        Device error. See Appendix B.

Invalid drive in search path
[MS-DOS]
        The drive does not exist.

Invalid drive or file name
[EDLIN] [Recover]
        Specify a valid drive or a valid filename.

Invalid drive specification
[Chkdsk] [Diskcomp] [Diskcopy] [Format]
[Print] [Replace] [Sys] [Tree] [Xcopy]
        You must specify a valid drive.

Invalid environment size specified
[Command]
        You gave an invalid number of bytes with the /e
        switch. You must specify a number between 128 and
        32768.

Invalid number of parameters
[MS-DOS] [Attrib] [Recover] [Xcopy]
        You have specified the wrong number of options in
        the command line.

Invalid parameter
[Chkdsk][Diskcomp][Diskcopy][EDLIN]
[Format][Mode][Print][Replace][Sort]
[Subst][Sys][Tree][Xcopy]
          One of the switches that you have specified is
          wrong.

Invalid path or file name
[Copy][Xcopy]
          Specify a valid pathname or filename for this
          command command.

Invalid path, not directory, or directory not empty
[MS-DOS]
          You are unable to remove the directory requested
          for one of the specified reasons.

Invalid sub-directory entry
[Chkdsk]
          The subdirectory that you specified either does
          not exist or is invalid. Check to see that you
          typed the subdirectory name correctly.

Invalid time
[Backup][Restore][Time][Xcopy]
          You specified an invalid time. Refer to Chapter 3
          for the correct syntax and try the command again.

Invalid Volume ID
[Format]
          Format displays this message if you enter a volume
          label that doesn't match the label on the hard
          disk you want to format. It then and quits the
          format process.

Invalid working directory
[MS-DOS]
          Your disk is bad. Replace the disk or make
          another copy from your backup system disk.

Label not found
[MS-DOS]
          There is a GOTO command to a nonexistent label in
          a batch file.

Line too long
[EDLIN]

> During a Replace command, the string given as the replacement caused the line to expand beyond 253 characters. Divide the long line into two lines and retry the Replace command.

List output is not assigned to a device
[Print]

> When you first run print, it asks you what device you want to specify as a print spooler. This message appears if Print is set up for a device that does not exist.

Lock violation reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]

> Device error. See Appendix B.

Lock violation writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]

> Device error. See Appendix B.

LPT#: not redirected
[Mode]

> Mode could not redirect the parallel printer port. Check to see that you have specified the proper options.

LPT#: redirected to COM#:
[Mode]

> Output on the parallel printer port will now be sent to this asynchronous communications port.

LPT#: set for 132
[Mode]

> The parallel printer port has been set for 132 columns.

LPT#: set for 80
[Mode]

> The parallel printer port has been set for 80 columns.

Memory allocation error. Cannot load MS-DOS, system halted
[MS-DOS]
          Restart MS-DOS. If this error persists, make a
          new copy of the MS-DOS disk from your backup copy
          of the system disk.

--More--
[More]
          Press the Spacebar to view more of the file or
          directory.

MORE: Incorrect DOS version
[More]
          More will not run on versions of MS-DOS previous
          to 2.0.

Must specify destination line number
[More]
          You must specify a destination line number when
          you are copying and inserting lines with EDLIN.

Must specify ON or OFF
[MS-DOS]
          The command requires either an ON or an OFF
          argument.

Name of list device [PRN]:
[Print]
          This prompt appears the first time that Print is
          run. Any valid device may be specified and that
          device then becomes the Print output device.

Network has not been started
[Redir]
          You must start the network before you can use the
          Redir command.

New file
[EDLIN]
          This message is printed if EDLIN does not find a
          file with the name you specified. If you are
          creating a new file, ignore this message. If you
          do not intend to create a new file, check to see
          that you correctly typed the filename of the file
          you wish to edit.

No COM: ports
[Mode]
          Your computer does not have a COM: port.

No files added/replaced
[Replace]
          The Replace command did not add or replace any
          files.

No files found (filename)
[Replace]
          Replace could not find matching source or target
          files.

No files match d:xxxxxxxx.xxx
[Print]
          A filename was given for files to add to the
          queue, but no files match the specification.

No free file handles.
Cannot start COMMAND.COM, exiting
[MS-DOS]
          Restart MS-DOS. If this message persists,
          increase the Files command value in the CONFIG.SYS
          file.

Non-DOS disk error reading drive (x)
[MS-DOS][Print]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Non-system disk or disk error
Replace and strike any key when ready
[Format][Sys]
          Replace the disk with the proper disk and press
          any alphanumeric key to continue.

No paper error writing device (dev)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

No path
[MS-DOS]
          You typed Path and pressed the Return key to find
          out what your search path is. There is no current
          command search path.

No room for system on destination disk
[Sys]
>   There is not enough room for the system files on
>   the destination disk. Delete some files to make
>   room for the system files or use another disk.
>   You may need to reformat the disk to put the
>   system on it.

No room in directory for file
[EDLIN]
>   You have tried to save a file to the root
>   directory but it is full. Subdirectories are not
>   limited in size as is the root directory.

No subdirectories exist
[Tree]
>   The disk in the drive you specified does not
>   contain subdirectories.

No system on default drive
[Sys]
>   The system files do not exist on the disk in the
>   default drive.

Not enough memory
[Join] [Share] [Subst]
>   There is not enough memory for MS-DOS to run the
>   command.

Not enough room to merge the entire file
[EDLIN]
>   There was not enough room in memory to hold the
>   file during a Transfer command. You must free
>   some memory by writing some files to disk or
>   deleting some files before you can transfer this
>   file.

Not found
[EDLIN]
>   You have specified a Search or a Replace command
>   that was unable to find a further occurrence of
>   the specified Search or Replace string.

Not ready error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
>   Device error. See Appendix B.

Not ready error writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

O.K.?
[EDLIN]
          This prompt occurs during Search and Replace
          command processing. If you press any key except Y
          or the Return key, the search or replace process
          continues.

Out of environment space
[MS-DOS]
          There is not enough room in the program
          environment to accept more data. You can use
          Command with the /e switch to increase the size of
          the environment.

Parameters not compatible
[Format][Replace]
          You have specified switches that cannot be used
          together.

Parameters not compatible with fixed disk
[Format]
          You have used a switch that is not compatible with
          the specified drive.

Parameters not supported
[MS-DOS][Format]
          You have specified parameters that MS-DOS does not
          support.

Parameters not supported by Drive
[Format]
          Format displays this message when the device
          driver for this drive does not support Generic
          IOCTL function requests.

Path not found
[Chkdsk][Replace][Subst]
          You specified an invalid path.

Path too long
[Replace] [Xcopy]
          The path name you specified was too long. You may
          have to change directories to replace files in
          deep subdirectories.

Press any key to begin adding files
[Replace]
          When you specify the /w switch, Replace displays
          this message to prompt you to start replacing
          files.

Press any key to begin recovery of the
file(s) on drive (x:)
[Recover]
          This prompt is issued before you recover a disk or
          file.   Press any character or number key to begin
          the recover process. If you wish to end this
          command, press Control-C.

Press any key when ready
[Diskcomp] [Diskcopy]
          This prompt occurs when you are copying disks.
          When   you   have inserted the disks into the
          appropriate drives, press any character or number
          key to begin the Diskcopy process. If you want to
          end this command, press Control-C.

Printer lines per inch set
[Mode]
          Mode has set the number of lines per inch for the
          printer.

PRINT queue is empty
[Print]
          There are no files waiting to be printed.

PRINT queue is full
[Print]
          There is only room for 10 files in the list of
          files waiting to be printed.

Probable non-DOS disk
Continue (Y/N)?
[Chkdsk]
          The disk you are using is not recognized by this
          version of MS-DOS. The disk either was created by
          another system with a format that is not supported

on this version of MS-DOS or is not an MS-DOS
disk. Do not continue processing if Chkdsk
returned this message for a removable disk. If
this message is returned for a hard disk, the
information describing the characteristics of the
disk to MS-DOS has been destroyed. In this case,
you may continue Chkdsk processing.

Processing cannot continue
[Chkdsk]
There is not enough memory in your machine to
process Chkdsk for this disk. You must obtain
more memory to run Chkdsk.

Program too big to fit in memory
[MS-DOS]
You must acquire more memory to run your
application. It is possible that some programs
you have run are still using some memory. You may
try to restart MS-DOS; however, if you still
receive this message, you must acquire more
memory.

Read error in (filename)
[Find]
MS-DOS could not read the file.

Read fault error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
Device error. See Appendix B.

Reading source file(s)...
[Xcopy]
Xcopy is now reading the source files that you
specified.

Redirector already installed
[Redir]
The Redirector can only be installed once.

Re-insert diskette for drive (x:)
[Format]
Reinsert the disk being formatted in the indicated
drive.

Resident part of PRINT installed
[Print]
          This is the first message that MS-DOS displays
          when you issue the Print command. It means that
          available memory has been reduced by several
          thousand bytes to process the Print command
          concurrent with other processes.

Resident portion of MODE loaded
[Mode]
          Part of the Mode program is now resident in
          memory.

Resynch failed. Files are too different.
[FC]
          FC displays this message if the number of lines in
          the internal line buffer is less than the number
          of consecutive, differing lines. You should
          specify the /Lb switch with a larger number if you
          want to display all of the file differences.

SECOND diskette bad or incompatible
[Diskcomp]
          The second disk does not contain the same format
          as the first disk, or Diskcomp does not recognize
          the format of the second disk. You should run
          Chkdsk to help you identify the problem.

Sector not found error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Sector not found error writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Sector size too large in file (filename)
[MS-DOS]
          The specified device driver loaded by CONFIG.SYS
          uses a sector size larger than that of any other
          device driver on the system. You cannot run this
          device driver.

Seek error reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Seek error writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

SHARE already installed
[Share]
          Share can only be installed once.

Sharing violation reading drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

SORT: Incorrect DOS version
[Sort]
          Sort will not run on MS-DOS versions prior to
          MS-DOS 2.0.

SORT: Insufficient disk space
[Sort]
          The disk is full.

SORT: Insufficient memory
[Sort]
          There is not enough memory to run the Sort
          program.

Source and target diskettes are not the same format.
Cannot do the copy
[Diskcopy]
          You must have the same size and kind of disks to
          run Diskcopy. Example: you cannot copy from a
          single-sided disk   to   a   double-sided   disk.
          Reformat the target disk to be of the same type as
          the source disk.

Source path required
[Replace]
          You did not specify a source path for Replace.

Specified drive does not exist,
or is non-removable
[Diskcomp]
          You must specify the name of a valid floppy drive.
          Diskcomp cannot compare hard disks.

Specified MS-DOS search directory bad
[MS-DOS]
> The Shell command in the CONFIG.SYS file is
> incorrect. The place that you have told MS-DOS to
> find COMMAND.COM does not exist, or COMMAND.COM is
> not in that place.

Strike a key when ready...
[MS-DOS]
> This prompt occurs during command processing and
> is always accompanied by another message. This
> message is also displayed if you have inserted a
> Pause command in a batch file. Usually, you are
> asked to insert disks into appropriate drives
> before this prompt. Press any character or number
> key to begin command processing.

Syntax error
[MS-DOS][Find]
> Check to make sure that you have typed the command
> correctly.

System transferred
[Format][Sys]
> The system files MS-DOS.SYS and IO.SYS have been
> transferred during Format or Sys command
> processing.

Terminate batch job (Y/N)?
[MS-DOS]
> If you press Control-C while in batch mode, MS-DOS
> asks you whether or not you wish to end batch
> processing. Press Y to end processing. Press N
> to continue the batch job.

Too many files open
[EDLIN]
> MS-DOS could not open the file to edit on the .BAK
> file due to lack of system file handles. Increase
> the value of the Files command in the CONFIG.SYS
> file.

Track 0 bad - disk unusable
[Format]
> The Format command can accommodate for defective
> sectors on the disk except ror those near the
> beginning. In this case, use another disk.

Unable to create a directory
[MS-DOS][Xcopy]
          MS-DOS could not create the directory you
          specified. Check to see that there is not a name
          conflict (you may have a file by the same name) or
          the disk may be full.

Unable to shift Screen
[Mode]
          Mode is unable to shift the test pattern on the
          screen any farther.

Unexpected DOS Error (NNN)
[Replace]
          An unexpected error occurred, where (NNN) is the
          MS-DOS error number.

Unrecognized command in CONFIG.SYS
[MS-DOS]
          There is an invalid command in your CONFIG.SYS
          file. Refer to Appendix D for a list of valid
          statements.

Unrecoverable error in directory
Convert directory to file (Y/N)?
[Chkdsk]
          If you respond Y to this prompt, Chkdsk will
          convert the bad directory into a file. You can
          then fix the directory yourself or delete it.

usage: fc [/a] [/b] [/c] [/l] [/lb n] [/w]
[t] [/n] [/NNNN] file1 file2
[FC]
          One of the switches that you have specified is
          invalid.

VERIFY is off (or on)
[MS-DOS]
          This message tells you the current setting of the
          Verify command.

Volume in drive (x:) has no label
[MS-DOS][Label]
          This is an informational message displayed in
          response to the Dir and Label commands.

Volume in drive (x:) is (label)
[MS-DOS][Label]
          This is an informational message displayed in
          response to the Dir and Label commands.

Volume label (11 characters, ENTER for none)?
[Format][Label]
          This message is displayed when you specify the /v
          switch in the Format command, or when you give the
          Label command. Specify a volume label or press
          the Return key to indicate that you do not want a
          volume label for this disk.

WARNING, ALL DATA ON NON-REMOVABLE DISK
DRIVE X WILL BE LOST!
Proceed with Format (Y/N)?
[Format]
          There is data on the hard disk that you are trying
          to format. If you want to lose the data and
          format the disk, press Y (for Yes). If you do not
          want the files on your hard disk erased, press N
          (for No). Copy the files to a floppy disk and
          repeat the Format command.

Warning - directory full
[Recover]
          The root directory is too full for Recover
          processing. Delete some files in the root
          directory to free space.

Warning: Read error in EXE file
[Exe2bin]
          The amount read was less than the size of the
          header. This is a warning message only.

Write fault error writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Write protect error writing drive (x:)
[MS-DOS]
          Device error. See Appendix B.

Appendix F
Configuring Your Hard Disk (FDISK)

APPENDIX F

CONFIGURING YOUR HARD DISK (FDISK)

F.1 INTRODUCTION

Hard disks can be divided into one to four separate sections, called partitions. Partitions separate your hard disk into individual areas, and each partition may contain a different operating system.

To prepare your hard disk for MS-DOS, you must create a partition for MS-DOS, called a DOS partition. You can create a DOS partition on your hard disk by using a menu-driven utility called Fdisk. You need to use Fdisk if you want to:

- use your hard disk for MS-DOS

- create a DOS partition

- change the active partition

- delete a DOS partition

- display partition information

- choose the next hard disk on your computer

If you want to use your entire hard disk for MS-DOS, you will only use the Fdisk program once to create the DOS partition.

Note

Many computer stores configure hard disk computers for
MS-DOS, so you may not need to use Fdisk. They may
also format your hard disk to start MS-DOS when you
turn the power on. To determine whether or not this
has been done, try to start MS-DOS from your hard
disk, or run Fdisk and try to create a DOS partition.
Fdisk displays a message if your hard disk already has
a DOS partition.

F.2 STARTING FDISK

To start Fdisk, type:

    fdisk

and press the Return key. Fdisk displays its main
menu on your screen:

    Fixed Disk Setup Program Version 0.01
    (C)Copyright Microsoft, 1985, 1986.

    FDISK Options

    Choose one of the following:

        1.   Create DOS Partition
        2.   Change Active Partition
        3.   Delete DOS Partition
        4.   Display Partition Data
        5.   Select Next Fixed Disk Drive

    Enter choice:[1]

    Press ESC to return to DOS

If your computer does not have more than one hard
disk, choice 5 will not appear on this menu.

The following sections contain a description of each
of these options, and show the screens that they
display. To return to MS-DOS from the main menu,
just press the Escape key. You can also use the

Escape key to return to the main menu from any of the other Fdisk screens.

Each Fdisk screen displays a default value. To choose the default value, press Return. To choose another value, just type the value you want, and then press the Return key.

F.2.1 Choice 1 - Creating a DOS Partition

If you choose the first option on the main menu, and if your hard disk already contains a DOS partition, Fdisk displays a screen showing partition status information for your hard disk. For example, your screen might look something like this:

Create DOS Partition

Partition	Status	Type	Start	End	Size
1	A	DOS	0	304	305

Total disk space is 305 cylinders

Fixed disk already has a DOS partition.

Press ESC to return to FDISK Options

If your hard disk does not contain a DOS partition, Fdisk displays the following screen:

Create DOS partition

Current Fixed Disk Drive: 1

Do you wish to use the entire fixed disk for DOS (Y/N)....................? [Y]

If you want to use the entire hard disk for MS-DOS, press the Return key to accept the default setting, Y. Fdisk displays the message:

System will now restart
Insert DOS diskette in drive A:
Press any key when ready . . .

You should insert your MS-DOS disk in drive A and press any key to restart MS-DOS.

Now that you have created your DOS partition, you must format your hard disk so that MS-DOS can use it. If you want to start MS-DOS from your hard disk, remember to use the Format /s switch. (Refer to the Format command in Chapter 3 "MS-DOS Commands," for more information on how to format your hard disk.)

F.2.1.1 Using Part of Your Hard Disk for MS-DOS -

If you want to use only part of your hard disk for MS-DOS, press N, then press Return. Fdisk displays the following message:

```
Total fixed disk space is xxxx cylinders
Maximum available space is xxxx.
cylinders at xxxx.
Enter partition size.............: [xxxx]
```

This message shows the total number of cylinders available for a hard disk partition, and prompts you to enter the size of your new partition. The default for the partition size is the maximum available space on the hard disk. Press the Return key if you want the default; otherwise type the size (in cylinders) that you want for the partition, and press the Return key. Fdisk now displays:

```
Enter starting cylinder number..:[xxxx]
```

Note

Fdisk adjust the partition boundaries to avoid bad tracks if it finds any defective tracks at the start of the partition.

The default starting cylinder number starts at the first cylinder large enough to contain the partition. If you want to locate the DOS partition at the default location, press the Return key. Otherwise, type the number of the cylinder where you want the DOS partition, and press the Return key.

If you want to start MS-DOS from this partition on your hard disk, remember to use the Format /s switch. (Refer to the Format command in Chapter 3 "MS-DOS Commands," for more information on formatting your hard disk.)

Note

You can only have one DOS partition on your hard disk
at a time. To create a partition for another operating
system you must refer to the documentation for that
operating system.

F.2.2 Choice 2 – Changing the Active Partition

If you choose the second option on the main menu,
Fdisk displays a screen showing the status of each
partition on your hard disk. The active partition,
indicated with a status of "A", is the partition
whose operating system and files you access when you
turn on the power or reset your computer. Only one
partition is active at a time, the others are
non-active, indicated with a status of "N".

For example, your Change Active Partition screen
might look like this:

Change Active Partition

Current Fixed Disk Drive: 1

Partition	Status	Type	Start	End	Size
1	A	DOS	0	119	120
2	N	non-DOS	120	304	185

Total disk space is   305 cylinders

Enter the number of the partition you
want to make active...............: [1]

Press ESC to return to FDISK Options

Type the number of the partition that you want to
activate, and press the Return key. The default
setting is the active partition number.

If you are using the entire hard disk as a DOS
partition, Fdisk displays the message:

Partition 1 is already active

Press Esc to return to FDISK Options

instead of prompting you for the partition that you
want to activate.   Press the Esc key to return to
the main menu.

F.2.3   Choice 3 – Deleting a DOS Partition

If you choose the third option on the main menu,
Fdisk displays a screen showing the status of each
partition on your hard disk,   and prompts you to
delete the DOS partition.   When you delete a DOS
partition, Fdisk deletes the   partition boundaries
and any data that existed in that partition.   Once
you delete the partition, YOU CANNOT RECOVER THAT
DATA.

Note

You cannot use Fdisk to delete a non-DOS partition.
You need to put an MS-DOS system disk into drive A to
continue using MS-DOS after you have deleted the DOS
partition. If you want to start a different operating
system in another partition of your hard disk, you
need to change the active partition to that number
BEFORE you delete the DOS partition.

Your Delete DOS Partition screen might look like
this:

Delete DOS Partition

Current Fixed Disk Drive: 1

Partition Status Type   Start End Size
    1   N   DOS   0 304 305

Total fixed disk space is 305 cylinders

Warning! Data in the DOS partition
will be lost. Do you wish to
continue.:......................? [N]

Press ESC to return to FDISK Options

If you do not want to delete the DOS partition,
press the Return key to accept the default value N.
To delete the DOS partition, type Y, and then press

the Return key.

F.2.4 Choice 4 – Displaying Partition Data

If you choose the fourth option on the main menu, Fdisk displays a screen that contains information about each of the partitions on your hard disk.

For example, your Display Partition Information screen might look like this:

    Display Partition Information

    Partition Status Type   Start End Size
         1   N '   DOS   0 304 305

    Total fixed disk space is 305 cylinders

    Press ESC to return to FDISK Options

This screen gives you information about the number of the partition, the status of the partition, the type of the partition, the starting and ending cylinder numbers of the partition, and the size of the partition in cylinders. Press the Esc key to return to the main menu.

F.2.5 Choice 5 – Next Fixed Disk

This option appears on the Fdisk main menu only if you have more than one hard disk attached to your computer. If you choose this option, Fdisk changes the current disk drive to the next drive number.

For example, if the current disk drive is number 1, and you choose option 5 on the main menu, Fdisk changes the current disk drive to number 2. Now you can choose any of the Fdisk options to prepare the second fixed disk for MS-DOS.

Appendix G
Installable Device Drivers

INSTALLABLE DEVICE DRIVERS

G.1 INTRODUCTION

DRIVER.SYS and RAMDRIVE.SYS are two installable device drivers provided with MS-DOS. This appendix explains the details of these drivers. You should read Appendix D, "How to Configure Your System" for more information on how to install them.

G.2 DRIVER.SYS

DRIVER.SYS is an installable device driver that supports external drives. To install DRIVER.SYS, include the following command line in your CONFIG.SYS file:

device=driver.sys /d:<dd> [/c] [/f:<ff>] [/h:<hh>] [/n]
[/s:<sss>] [/t<ttt>]

The <dd> parameter on the /d switch specifies a physical drive number between 0 and 255. Physical drives are numbered differently than logical drives. Floppy drives are numbered starting at 0, and hard drives are numbered starting at 80H.

For example, if you have a computer with two floppy drives, they might be numbered 0 and 1. If you add an external floppy drive, its physical drive number is 02H.

If you have a computer with one floppy and one hard drive, the floppy drive is number 00H, but the hard drive is number 80H. If you add an external floppy drive, its physical drive number is still 02H, because MS-DOS already knows the definitions of physical drives 00H and 01H.

The /c switch specifies that changeline (doorlock) support is required.

The <ff> option on the /f switch specifies the form factor
index where:

    0 = 320/360 KB
    1 = 1.2 MB
    2 = 720 KB
    3 = 8" single density
    4 = 8" double density
    5 = Hard disk
    6 = Tape drive
    7 = Other

If you do not specify the /f switch, DRIVER.SYS uses a
default of 720 KB.

The <hh> option on the /h switch specifies the maximum head
number. Its value can range from 1 to 99.

The /n switch specifies a non-removable block device.

The <ss> option on the /s switch specifies the number of
sectors per track. Its value can range from 1 to 99.

The <ttt> option on the /t switch specifies the number of
tracks per side on the block device. Its value can range
from 1 to 999.

For example, if you want to add an external 720 KB drive to
your computer, you would include the following line in the
CONFIG.SYS file:

device=driver.sys /d:02

G.3 RAMDRIVE.SYS

RAMDRIVE.SYS is a device driver that lets you use a portion
of your computer's memory as if it were a disk drive. This
memory area is called a RAM disk and is sometimes referred
to as a virtual disk.

RAM disks are much faster than disk drives because the
information they contain is always loaded into memory. If
your computer has extended memory installed (starting at the
1MB boundary), or if you have an extended memory board that
meets the Lotus(R)/Intel(R)/Microsoft(R) Expanded Memory
Specification, you can use this memory for one or more RAM
disks. Otherwise RAMDRIVE.SYS locates RAM drives in low
memory.

Note

This command increases the size of MS-DOS resident in memory.

To install RAMDRIVE.SYS, include the following command in your CONFIG.SYS file:

device=ramdrive.sys [<bbbb>] [<ssss>] [<dddd>] [/e | /a]

The <bbbb> option specifies the disk size in kilobytes. The default is 64, the minimum value is 16.

The <ssss> option specifies the sector size in bytes. The default value is 128. The values: 128, 256, 512, and 1024 are allowed.

The <dddd> option specifies the number of root directory entries. The default value is 64, the minimum value is 2, and the maximum value is 1024.

RAMDRIVE.SYS adjusts the value of <dddd> to the nearest sector boundary. For example, if you give a value of 25 when the sector size is 512 bytes, the 25 will be rounded up to 32. This is because 32 is the next multiple of 16 (there are sixteen 32-byte directory entries in 512 bytes).

The /e option lets you use extended memory (above 1MB) as a RAM disk if it has been installed. If you use this switch, you cannot use the /a switch.

The /a option lets you use an extended memory board that meets the Lotus(R)/Intel(R)/Microsoft(R) Expanded Memory Specification for a RAM drive, if that board has been installed. If you use this switch, you cannot use the /e switch.

Note

When you reset or turn off the power on your computer, the information stored in RAM disks is lost.

INDEX

MICROSOFT™